|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  **TRƯỜNG ĐẠI HỌC KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** | **CỘNG HOÀ XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM**  **Độc lập - Tự do - Hạnh phúc**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** |

**CHƯƠNG TRÌNH ĐÀO TẠO**

*(Ban hành theo Quyết định số 41/QĐ-ĐHKTQD ngày 10 tháng 01 năm 2020 của Hiệu trưởng)*

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| CHƯƠNG TRÌNH (PROGRAMME): | **CỬ NHÂN KINH TẾ HỌC TÀI CHÍNH** (BACHELOR OF FINANCIAL ECONOMICS) – Tiếng Anh |
| TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO (LEVEL OF EDUCATION): | ĐẠI HỌC (UNDERGRADUATE) |
| NGÀNH ĐÀO TẠO (MAJOR): | **KINH TẾ (ECONOMICS)** |
| MÃ NGÀNH ĐÀO TẠO (CODE): | **7310101** |
| MÃ CHƯƠNG TRÌNH ĐÀO TẠO: |  |
| LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO (TYPE OF EDUCATION): | CHÍNH QUY (FULL - TIME) |

**1. MỤC TIÊU**

**1.1. Mục tiêu chung**

Đào tạo cử nhân đại học có phẩm chất chính trị cao, có đạo đức và sức khỏe tốt, có trách nhiệm xã hội; nắm vững kiến thức cơ bản về kinh tế, và có kiến thức và kỹ năng chuyên sâu liên quan tới kinh tế học tài chính, đặc biệt là những kiến thức và việc vận dụng các kỹ năng chuyên môn để tiến hành phân tích khoa học trong kinh tế và tài chính; có tư duy độc lập; có năng lực tự học tập bổ sung kiến thức đáp ứng yêu cầu của công việc.

**1.2. Mục tiêu cụ thể**

***- Về kiến thức, kỹ năng, năng lực tự chủ và chịu trách nhiệm:*** đạt chuẩn đầu ra theo quy định tại Thông tư số 07/TT-BGDĐT ngày 16/4/2015 của Bộ trưởng Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo.

***- Vị trí và nơi làm việc sau khi tốt nghiệp:***

Cử nhân chương trình Kinh tế học tài chính bằng tiếng Anh có cơ hội việc làm tại các vị trí sau:

- Chuyên viên trong các trung tâm nghiên cứu Kinh tế và Tài chính trong nước và nước ngoài; các cơ quan quản lý nhà nước về Kinh tế- Tài chính- Ngân hàng từ trung ương đến địa phương

- Giảng viên, nghiên cứu viên trong các viện, trường đại học;

- Chuyên gia tư vấn trong các tổ chức tài chính, các tổ chức phi chính phủ, các dự án liên quan đến kinh tế tài chính, các công ty tư vấn về M&A, tư vấn về quản lý…

- Chuyên viên tại bộ phận nguồn vốn và bộ phận đầu tư của các ngân hàng thương mại, công ty chứng khoán, công ty quản lý quỹ

- Chuyên viên phân tích tại bộ phận Tài chính, Tư vấn đầu tư tài chính của các doanh nghiệp

***- Trình độ ngoại ngữ và tin học:*** đạt chuẩn đầu ra về ngoại ngữ (IELTS 6.0 hoặc tương đương) và tin học theo quy định của Chương trình và của Trường Đại học Kinh tế Quốc dân.

**2. CHUẨN ĐẦU RA** (theo Thông tư số 07/2015/TT-BGDĐT)

**2.1. Kiến thức:**

Các cử nhân kinh tế học tài chính được trang bị: (1) những kiến thức nền tảng về kinh tế và những kiến thức chuyên sâu về tài chính, các chính sách, các quyết định của Chính phủ và các doanh nghiệp trong nước và quốc tế; (2) khả năng vận dụng các lý thuyết, mô hình kinh tế, tài chính được trang bị vào việc phân tích, đánh giá và giải thích các vấn đề, hiện tượng kinh tế thực tiễn thời sự trong nước và quốc tế; (3) năng lực phân tích, đánh giá thực trạng tình hình thị trường, doanh nghiệp thuộc lĩnh vực kinh tế và tài chính để từ đó đưa ra các đề xuất, khuyến nghị về chiến lược phát triển, chiến lược cạnh tranh cho các doanh nghiệp; (4) các hiểu biết về các quy định về hệ thống tài chính và thị trường tài chính nói chung, đặc biệt là về lĩnh vực đầu tư tài chính và các dịch vụ đầu tư tài chính; (5) các hiểu biết và khả năng vận dụng các kiến thức về hoạt động tài chính khu vực nhà nước, hoạt động tài chính quốc tế và hoạt động tài chính của các doanh nghiệp; nghiên cứu, phân tích, tổng hợp và đề xuất chính sách về hoạt động và sự phát triển của hệ thống tài chính và thị trường tài chính.

**2.2. Kỹ năng:**

Các cử nhân Kinh tế học tài chính được trang bị những kỹ năng chuyên sâu: (1) sử dụng các công cụ định lượng, sử dụng các phần mềm thống kê, kinh tế lượng để phân tích các chủ đề, các vấn đề, các quyết định trong các lĩnh vực kinh tế và tài chính; (2) Các kỹ năng thực hiện nghiên cứu, phân tích, tổng hợp, khái quát vấn đề, khả năng làm việc độc lập cũng như làm việc theo nhóm để giải quyết hiệu quả công việc; (3) các kỹ năng cần thiết để tổ chức và thực hiện các nghiên cứu, phân tích độc lập và phát triển các giải pháp tối ưu trong các lĩnh vực kinh tế và tài chính; (4) sử dụng tiếng Anh chuyên môn thành thạo.

**2.3. Năng lực tự chủ và trách nhiệm:**

Các cử nhân Kinh tế học tài chính có đạo đức và trách nhiệm nghề nghiệp; tôn trọng và chấp hành pháp luật, có ý thức tổ chức kỷ luật; năng động, nhiệt huyết và luôn có tinh thần hợp tác và trách nhiệm với công việc. Có năng lực dẫn dắt và ảnh hưởng về chuyên môn trong các lĩnh vực chuyên sâu; có sáng kiến trong thực hiện các công việc được giao; có khả năng tự định hướng và thích nghi với các môi trường làm việc khác nhau; có khả năng tự học tập, tích lũy kinh nghiệm để nâng cao trình độ chuyên môn; có khả năng đưa ra các kết luận về các vấn đề trong lĩnh vực chuyên sâu của mình; có năng lực lập kế hoạch, điều phối, phát huy trí tuệ tập thể; có năng lực đánh giá và cải tiến các hoạt động chuyên môn.

**3. KHỐI LƯỢNG KIẾN THỨC TOÀN KHÓA: 131 tín chỉ**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **4. ĐỐI TƯỢNG TUYỂN SINH:** | Theo quy chế tuyển sinh của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo và Đề án tuyển sinh đại học hệ chính quy của Trường Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân |
| **5. QUY TRÌNH ĐÀO TẠO, ĐIỀU KIỆN TỐT NGHIỆP:** | Thời gian đào tạo 04 năm theo quy chế của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo và quy định của Trường Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân về đào tạo đại học hệ chính quy theo hệ thống tín chỉ |
| **6. CÁCH THỨC ĐÁNH GIÁ** | Theo thang điểm 10, thang điểm 4 và thang điểm chữ |

**7. CẤU TRÚC, NỘI DUNG VÀ KẾ HOẠCH GIẢNG DẠY**

**7.1. Cấu trúc kiến thức**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Kiến thức** | **Khối lượng (tín chỉ)** | **Ghi chú** |
| 1. **Kiến thức giáo dục đại cương** | **47** |  |
| 1.1. Các học phần chung | 23 | Khoa học chính trị và ngoại ngữ |
| 1.2. Các học phần của Trường | 12 | Trường quy định bắt buộc |
| 1.3. Các học phần của ngành | 12 | Khoa tự chọn từ tổ hợp của Trường quy định |
| **2. Kiến thức giáo dục chuyên nghiệp** | **84** |  |
| **2.1. Kiến thức cơ sở ngành** | **12** |  |
| **2.2. Kiến thức ngành** | **41** |  |
| 2.2.1. Các học phần bắt buộc | 26 |  |
| 2.2.2. Các học phần tự chọn | 15 | SV tự chọn 15 tín chỉ (5 học phần) |
| **2.3. Kiến thức chuyên sâu** | **21** | SV tự chọn 21 tín chỉ (7 học phần) |
| **2.4 Chuyên đề thực tập** | **10** |  |
| **TỔNG SỐ** | **131** | Không kể GDQP&AN và GDTC |

**7.2. Nội dung và Kế hoạch giảng dạy (dự kiến)**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **TT** | **NỘI DUNG CTĐT** | | | **MÃ HP/BM** | **Ngôn ngữ giảng dạy** | **SỐ TC** | **PHÂN BỔ CÁC HỌC KỲ** | | | | | | | |
| **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | **5** | **6** | **7** | **8** |
|  | **Tổng số** | | |  |  | **131** | **18** | **18** | **18** | **17** | **17** | **18** | **15** | **10** |
|  | **1. KIẾN THỨC GIÁO DỤC ĐẠI CƯƠNG** | | |  |  | **47** | **18** | **15** | **6** | **8** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** |
|  | **1.1. Các học phần chung** | | |  |  | ***23*** | ***6*** | ***6*** | ***6*** | ***5*** | ***0*** | ***0*** | ***0*** | ***0*** |
| **1** | 1 | Triết học Mác - Lênin  Philosophy of Marxism – Leninism | | LLNL1105 | Tiếng Việt | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **2** | 2 | Kinh tế chính trị Mác - Lênin  Political economics of Maxism-Leninism | | LLNL1106 | Tiếng Việt | 2 |  | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **3** | 3 | Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học  Socialism Science | | LLNL1107 | Tiếng Việt | 2 |  |  | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |
| **4** | 4 | Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh Ho Chi Minh Ideology | | LLTT1101 | Tiếng Việt | 2 |  |  |  | 2 |  |  |  |  |
| **5** | 5 | Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam  History of the Communist Party of Vietnam | | LLDL1102 | Tiếng Việt | 2 |  |  |  |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| **6** | 6 | Ngoại ngữ Foreign Language | | NNKC | Tiếng Anh | 12 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | Giáo dục thể chất Physical Education | | GDTC | Tiếng Việt | 4 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | Giáo dục quốc phòng Military Education | | GDQP | Tiếng Việt | 8 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **1.2. Các học phần của Trường** | | |  |  | **12** | **9** | **3** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** |
| **6** | 1 | Đại số tuyến tính  Linear Algebra | | TOCB1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **7** | 2 | Pháp luật đại cương Fundamentals of Laws | | LUCS1129 | Tiếng Anh | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **8** | 3 | Kinh tế vi mô 1 Microeconomics 1 | | KHMI1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **9** | 4 | Kinh tế vĩ mô 1 Macroeconomics 1 | | KHMA1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **1.3. Các học phần của ngành** | | |  |  | **12** | **3** | **6** | **0** | **3** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** |
| **10** | 1 | Lý thuyết xác suất Probability Theory | | TOKT1105 | Tiếng Anh | 3 | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **11** | 2 | Lý thuyết tài chính tiền tệ  Monetary and Financial Theories | | NHLT1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **12** | 3 | Kinh tế lượng 1  Econometrics 1 | | TOKT1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |
| **13** | 4 | Nguyên lý kế toán Accounting Principles | | KTKE1101 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **2. KIẾN THỨC GIÁO DỤC CHUYÊN NGHIỆP** | | |  |  | **84** | **0** | **6** | **12** | **9** | **17** | **18** | **15** | **10** |
|  | ***2.1. Kiến thức cơ sở ngành*** | | |  |  | ***12*** | ***0*** | ***3*** | ***6*** | ***3*** | ***0*** | ***0*** | ***0*** | ***0*** |
| **14** | 1 | Thống kê toán  Mathematical Statistics | | TOKT1110 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |
| **15** | 2 | Kinh tế phát triển  Development Economics | | PTKT1128 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |
| **16** | 3 | Kinh tế quốc tế  International Economics 1 | | TMKQ1123 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **17** | 4 | Giải tích  Calculus | | TOCB1103 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ***2.2. Kiến thức ngành*** | | |  |  | ***41*** | ***0*** | ***0*** | ***6*** | ***6*** | ***17*** | ***12*** | ***0*** | ***0*** |
|  | **2.2.1. Các học phần bắt buộc** | | |  |  | **26** | **0** | **0** | **6** | **6** | **11** | **3** | **0** | **0** |
| **18** | 1 | Kinh tế vi mô 2 Microeconomics 2 | | KHMI1102 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |
| **19** | 2 | Kinh tế vĩ mô 2 Macroeconomics 2 | | KHMA1102 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |
| **20** | 3 | Kinh tế học Tài chính 1 Financial Economics 1 | | KHMA3301 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |
| **21** | 4 | Kinh tế học Tài chính 2 Financial Economics 2 | | KHMA3302 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |
| **22** | 5 | Kinh tế học và tài chính hành vi 1  Behavioural Finance and Economics 1 | | KHMI3301 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |
| **23** | 6 | Kinh tế học và tài chính hành vi 2  Behavioural Finance and Economics 2 | | KHMI3302 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |
| **24** | 7 | Cơ sở toán tài chính  Fundamentals of Financial Mathematics | | TOTC1106 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |  |
| **25** | 8 | Phân tích dữ liệu tài chính Analysis of Financial Data | | KHMA3303 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  | 3 |  |  |  |
| **26** | 9 | Đề án chuyên ngành  Essay on Financial  Economics | | KHMI3303 | Tiếng Anh | 2 |  |  |  |  | 2 |  |  |  |
| **27-31** | **2.2.2. Các học phần tự chọn  (SV tự chọn 05 học phần trong tổ hợp sau)** | | |  |  | **15** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **6** | **9** | **0** | **0** |
|  | 1 | Kinh tế Việt Nam  Vietnam's Economy | | KHEH1104 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 2 | Kinh tế lượng 2 Econometrics 2 | | TOKT1128 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 3 | Luật đầu tư và thị trường tài chính  Law of Investment and Financial Markets | | KHMI3304 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 4 | Chính sách tiền tệ, ngân hàng và thị trường tài chính  Monetary policy, banking and financial markets | | KHMA3304 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 5 | Kinh tế học vĩ mô quốc tế International Macroeconomics | | KHMA3305 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 6 | Kinh tế học tăng trưởng  Growth economics | | KHMA1122 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 7 | Lập kế hoạch tài chính cá nhân  Personal Financial Planning | | NHTM1119E | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 8 | Tài chính doanh nghiệp Corporate Finance | | NHTC1104 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 9 | Chu kỳ kinh doanh và các thị trường tài sản  Business Cycles and Asset Markets | | KHMA3306 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **32-38** | **2.3. Kiến thức chuyên sâu**  **(SV tự chọn 07 học phần trong một tổ hợp chuyên sâu sau)** | | |  |  | **21** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | **6** | **15** | **0** |
|  | 1 | Kinh tế vi mô 3  Microeconomics 3 | | KHMI3304 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 2 | Kinh tế vĩ mô 3  Macroeconomics 3 | | KHMA3307 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 3 | Kinh tế lượng tài chính Financial Econometrics | | KHMA3308 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 4 | Các mô hình định giá tài sản tài chính  Models of Financial Asset Pricing | | KHMI3305 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 5 | Thị trường và các thể chế tài chính  Financial Market and Institutions | | KHMA3308 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 6 | Kinh tế và Tài chính quốc tế  International Economy and Finance | | KHMA3309 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 7 | Phân tích đầu tư trên thị trường tài chính  Investment Analysis in Financial Markets | | KHMI1112 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 8 | Phân tích chính sách Kinh tế  Economic Policy Analysis | | KHMA3310 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 9 | Lý thuyết về lựa chọn danh mục đầu tư  Theories of Portfolio Choice | | KHMI3306 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 10 | Kinh tế học chứng khoán phái sinh  Economics of [Derivative](https://mcgill.ca/study/2018-2019/courses/FINE-448) Securities | | KHMI3307 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 11 | Ứng dụng lý thuyết trò chơi trong phân tích kinh tế  Application of game theory in economic analysis | | KHMI3308 | Tiếng Anh | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **39** | ***2.4. Chuyên đề thực tập (Intership Programme)*** | | | KHMI3309 | Tiếng Anh | ***10*** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | ***10*** |
|  | **Các môn học bổ trợ** | | |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Tiếng Anh** | | |  | **Tiếng Anh** | **6** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Tin học** | | |  | **Tiếng Anh** | **3** |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | | **CHUẨN ĐẦU RA ngoại ngữ, tin học và GDQP-AN,GDTC** | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  | | **Ghi chú: …** | | | | | | | | | | | |

**8. Hướng dẫn thực hiện**

***8.1. Giảng dạy tiếng Anh cơ bản và tiếng Anh chuyên ngành***

Để đáp ứng được yêu cầu học các học phần bằng tiếng Anh, Chương trình thiết kế môn ngoại ngữ tiếng Anh với thời lượng 36 tín chỉ không tính vào tổng số tín chỉ của chương trình trang bị cho sinh viên kiến thức nền tảng cơ bản và nâng cao về từ vựng, ngữ pháp, mở rộng các chủ đề và 4 kỹ năng thực hành tiếng Anh (nghe, nói, đọc, viết). Bên cạnh đó, chương trình còn có các giờ học tiếng Anh chuyên ngành kinh tế. Chương trình áp dụng các phương pháp tự học tiếng Anh, kỹ năng viết nghiên cứu, thuyết trình bằng tiếng Anh cũng được trau dồi và hoàn thiện, đảm bảo sinh viên tốt nghiệp có trình độ tiếng Anh IELTS 6.0 hoặc tương đương.

***8.2. Giảng dạy chuyên ngành bằng tiếng Anh***

* Căn cứ kế hoạch giảng dạy trong Chương trình đào tạo, Cố vấn học tập cung cấp danh mục học phần sẽ được giảng dạy trong từng kỳ để sinh viên có thể đăng ký, thời gian, hình thức thi và kiểm tra các môn học đó, điều kiện tiên quyết của từng môn
* Học phần được giảng dạy theo Đề cương học phần đã được phê duyệt và phải được cung cấp cho sinh viên trước khi giảng dạy
* Các học phần bao gồm giảng lý thuyết và thảo luận. Ngoại trừ 11 tín chỉ các môn Khoa học chính trị, các học phần còn lai trong chương trình đều được giảng dạy bằng tiếng Anh
* Các học phần phải tuân thủ điều kiện tiên quyết theo ràng buộc về chuyên môn được quy định trong phần mô tả nội dung các học phần
* Các giảng viên tham gia giảng dạy các học phần bằng tiếng Anh phải có trình độ ngoại ngữ tốt, là thạc sỹ, tiến sĩ được đào tạo ở nước ngoài hoặc đã và đang tham gia giảng dạy tại các chương trình dạy bằng tiếng Anh khác trong và ngoài Trường.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TRƯỞNG KHOA KINH TẾ HỌC**  **PGS.TS Hồ Đình Bảo** | **HIỆU TRƯỞNG**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  **TRƯỜNG ĐH KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN** | CỘNG HÒA XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM  **Độc lập – Tự do – Hạnh phúc** |

**ĐỀ CƯƠNG CHI TIẾT HỌC PHẦN**

**TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO**: ĐẠI HỌC **LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO**: CHÍNH QUY

**1. TÊN HỌC PHẦN:**

Tiếng Việt: **TRIẾT HỌC MÁC - LÊNIN**

Tiếng Anh: Philosophy of marxism and Leninism

Mã học phần: LLNL 1105 Tổng số tín chỉ: 03.

**2. BỘ MÔN PHỤ TRÁCH GIẢNG DẠY**: **NHỮNG NGUYÊN LÝ CƠ BẢN CHỦ NGHĨA MÁC - LÊNIN**.

**3. ĐIỀU KIỆN HỌC TRƯỚC**: Triết học Mac- Lênin là học phần đàu tiên trong hệ thống các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh mà sinh viên phải hoàn thành

**4. MÔ TẢ HỌC PHẦN**

Học phần trang bị những nội dung cơ bản của thế giới quan và phương pháp luận triết học của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin trong việc nghiên cứu và học tập các môn học khác trong chương trình đào tạo cũng như các tri thức khác của nhân loại; cho việc vận dụng các tri thức của sinh viên vào đời sống thực tiễn. Làm tiền đề trực tiếp để nghiên cứu các bộ phận cấu thành khác của chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin, tiếp cận môn Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam. Xây dựng niềm tin, lý tưởng cách mạng cho sinh viên, định hướng tư tưởng - chính trị trong chuyên ngành được đào tạo.

**5. MỤC TIÊU HỌC PHẦN**

Học phần này giúp sinh viên hiểu được những kiến thức cơ bản về triết học Mác – Lênin, hiểu được cơ sở lý luận cơ bản nhất về: chủ nghĩa duy vật biện chứng, nội dung của phép biện chứng duy vật, chủ nghĩa duy vật lịch sử, để từ đó có thể tiếp cận được nội dung môn học Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, hiểu biết nền tảng tư tưởng của Đảng. Giúp sinh viên xác lập thế giới quan, nhân sinh quan và phương pháp luận chung nhất để tiếp cận các khoa học chuyên ngành được đào tạo; xây dựng niềm tin, lý tưởng cách mạng cho sinh viên, rèn luyện năng lực tư duy, kỹ năng nghiên cứu khoa học đối với sinh viên

**6. PHÂN BỔ THỜI GIAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| STT | Nội dung | TTổng số tiết | Trong đó | | Ghi chú |
| Lý thuyết | Bài tập, thảo luận, kiểm tra |
| 1  2  3 | Chương 1  Chương 2  Chương 3 | 8  17  13 | 5  10  8 | 3  7  5 | Điều kiện để giảng dạy: Phải có máy chiếu |
|  | ***Cộng*** | ***38*** | ***23*** | ***15*** | ***Tiết 60 phút*** |

**CHƯƠNG I - TRIẾT HỌC VÀ VAI TRÒ CỦA TRIẾT HỌC**

**TRONG ĐỜI SỐNG XÃ HỘI**

Chủ nghĩa Mác-Lênin là một trong những cơ sở, nguồn gốc lý luận khoa học căn bản nhất của sự hình thành, phát triển tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và đường lối cách mạng của Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam. Vì vậy, để có thể nắm vững các nội dung tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và quan điểm, đường lối chính sách của Đảng và Nhà nước ta, trước hết cần phải hiểu được những nội dung căn bản nhất của chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin – tức nắm vững các nguyên lý cơ bản của nó. Đồng thời, việc nắm vững những nguyên lý cơ bản đó còn là để xây dựng phương pháp luận khoa học cho việc tiếp cận các tri thức khoa học chuyên ngành thuộc lĩnh vực chuyên môn được đào tạo của sinh viên.

I. TRIẾT HỌC VÀ VẤN ĐỀ CƠ BẢN CỦA TRIẾT HỌC

1. Khái lược về triết học

*a. Nguồn gốc của triết học*

*b. Khái niệm Triết học*

*c. Vấn đề đối tượng của triết học trong lịch sử*

*d. Triết học - hạt nhân lý luận của thế giới quan*

2. Vấn đề cơ bản của triết học

*a. Nội dung vấn đề cơ bản của triết học*

*b. Chủ nghĩa duy vật và chủ nghĩa duy tâm*

*c. Thuyết có thể biết (Khả tri luận) và thuyết không thể biết (Bất khả tri luận)*

3. Biện chứng và siêu hình *a. Khái niệm biện chứng và siêu hình trong lịch sử*

*b. Các hình thức của phép biện chứng trong lịch sử*

II. TRIẾT HỌC MÁC – LÊNIN VÀ VAI TRÒ CỦA TRIẾT HỌC MÁC – LÊNIN TRONG ĐỜI SỐNG XÃ HỘI

1. Sự ra đời và phát triển của triết học Mác - Lênin

*a. Những điều kiện lịch sử của sự ra đời triết học Mác*

*b. Ba thời kỳ chủ yếu trong hình thành và phát triển của Triết học Mác (Giai đoạn Mác và Ăngghen)*

*c. Thực chất và ý nghĩa cuộc cách mạng trong triết học do C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen thực hiện*

*d. Giai đoạn Lênin trong sự phát triển Triết học Mác*

2. Đối tượng và chức năng của triết học Mác – Lênin

*a. Khái niệm triết học Mác – Lênin*

*b. Đối tượng của triết học Mác - Lênin*

*c. Chức năng của triết học Mác - Lênin*

3. Vai trò của triết học Mác - Lênin trong đời sống xã hội và trong sự nghiệp đổi mới ở Việt Nam hiện nay

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Hội đồng Trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh (1999), *Giáo trình triết học Mác-Lênin*, NXB CTQG, HN

2. Hội đồng Trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh (2010), *Giáo trình triết học Mác-Lênin (Tái bản có sửa chữa*), NXB CTQG, HN

3. V.I Lênin, Ba nguồn gốc và ba bộ phận cấu thành chủ nghĩa Mác, toàn tập, tập 23, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005

**CHƯƠNG II - CHỦ NGHĨA DUY VẬT BIỆN CHỨNG**

Chương này là nhằm xác lập nguyên lý cơ bản nhất thuộc thế giới quan và phương pháp luận chung nhất của Chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin :đó là nguyên lý kết hợp giữa *nguyên tắc khách quan và nguyên tắc sáng tạo* trong hoạt động nhận thức khoa học và hoạt động thực tiễn cách mạng. Nguyên lý đó được xây dựng trên cơ sở lý giải theo lập trường duy vật biện chứng đối với vấn đề cơ bản của triết học.

Được xác lập trên nền tảng của thế giới quan duy vật khoa học, phép biện chứng duy vật là sự thống nhất giữa nội dung của thế giới quan duy vật biện chứng và phương pháp luận biện chứng duy vật, do đó nó là công cụ để nhận thức và cải tạo thế giới. Mỗi nguyên lý, quy luật trong phép biện chứng duy vật của chủ nghĩa Mác-Lênin không chỉ là sự giải thích đúng đắn về tính biện chứng của thế giới mà còn là phương pháp luận khoa học của việc nhận thức và cải tạo thế giới. Do vậy, phép biện chứng duy vật giữ vai trò là nội dung đặc biệt quan trọng, tạo nên tính khoa học và tính cách mạng của chủ nghĩa Mác-Lênin, đồng thời nó cũng là thế giới quan và phương pháp luận chung nhất của hoạt động sáng tạo trong các lĩnh vực nghiên cứu khoa học.

I. VẬT CHẤT VÀ Ý THỨC

1. Vật chất và các hình thức tồn tại của vật chất

a. Quan niệm của chủ nghĩa duy tâm và chủ nghĩa duy vật trước Mác về phạm trù vật chất

b. Cuộc cách mạng trong khoa học tự nhiên cuối thế kỷ XIX - đầu thế kỷ XX và sự phá sản của các quan điểm duy vật siêu hình về vật chất

c. Quan niệm của triết học Mác - Lênin về vật chất

d. Các hình thức tồn tại của vật chất

e. Tính thống nhất vật chất của thế giới

2. Nguồn gốc, bản chất và kết cấu của ý thức

3. Mối quan hệ giữa vật chất và ý thức

II. PHÉP BIỆN CHỨNG DUY VẬT

1. Hai lọai hình biện chứng và PBC duy vật

2. Nội dung của phép biện chứng duy vật

III. LÝ LUẬN NHẬN THỨC

1. Các nguyên tắc của lý luận nhận thức duy vật biện chứng

2. Nguồn gốc, bản chất của nhận thức

3. Thực tiễn và vai trò của thực tiến đối với nhận thức

4. Các giai đoạn cơ bản của quá trình nhận thức

5. Tính chất của chân lý

Tài liệu tham khảo

1. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2019), *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Sử dụng trong các trường đại học không chuyên lý luận chính trị). Tài liệu dung tập huẩn giảng dạy năm 2019.

2. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2014) *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Dùng trong đào tạo thạc sỹ, tiến sỹ các ngành KHXN và NV không chuyên ngành Triết học). Nxb Đại học Sư phạm Hà Nội, Hà Nội.

3. A.P.Séptulin, *Bàn về mối lien hệ lẫn nhau của các phạm trù trong triết học mácxít,* NXBSự thật, Hà Nội, 1961.

4. A.P.Séptulin, *Phương pháp nhận thức biện chứng,* Nxb. Tiến Bộ và Nxb.Sự thật, Hà Nội, 1989

**CHƯƠNG III - CHỦ NGHĨA DUY VẬT LỊCH SỬ**

Để tồn tại, để sống con người cần thực hiện quá trình sản xuất ra của cải vật chất. “Điểm khác biệt căn bản giữa xã hội loài người với xã hội loài vật là ở chỗ: loài vật may mắn lắm chỉ hái lượm trong khi con người lại sản xuất” – Ph.Ăngghen. Trên cơ sở quá trình sản xuất vật chất mà các quan hệ xã hội, toàn bộ xã hội được hình thành và phát triển. Đời sống xã hội của con người diễn ra trên cơ sở hoạt động của con người có ý thức. Tuy nhiên, sự phát triển của đời sống xã hội không do ý thức con người quyết định mà diễn ra dưới sự tác động quy định của các quy luật khách quan, trong đó quy luật về sự phù hợp của quan hệ sản xuất với trình độ phát triển của lực lượng sản xuất là cơ bản và phổ biến nhất.

**I. HỌC THUYẾT HÌNH THÁI KINH TẾ - XÃ HỘI**

1. Sản xuất vật chất là cơ sở của sự tồn tại và phát triển

xã hội

2. Biện chứng giữa lực lượng sản xuất và quan hệ sản xuất

3. Biện chứng giữa cơ sở hạ tầng và kiến trúc thượng tầng của xã hội

4. Sự phát triển các hình thái kinh tế - xã hội là một quá trình lịch sử - tự nhiên

**II. GIAI CẤP VÀ DÂN TỘC**

1. Giai cấp và đấu tranh giai cấp

2. Dân tộc

3. Mối quan hệ giai cấp – dân tộc – nhân loại

**III. NHÀ NƯỚC VÀ CÁCH MẠNG XÃ HỘI**

1. Nhà nước

2. Cách mạng xã hội chủ nghĩa

**IV. Ý THỨC XÃ HỘI**

1. Khái niệm tồn tại xã hội và các yếu tố của tồn tại xã hội

2. Khái niệm ý thức xã hội và kết cấu cảu YTXH

**V. TRIẾT HỌC VỀ CON NGƯỜI**

1. Khái niệm con người và bản chất con người

2. Hiện tượng tha hóa con người và vấn đề giải phóng con người

3. quan hệ cá nhân và xã hội, về vai trò của quần chúng nhân dân và lãnh tụ trong lịch sử

4. Vấn đề con người trong sự nghiệp cách mạng ở Việt Nam

**Tài liệu tham khảo của chương**

1. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2019), *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Sử dụng trong các trường đại học không chuyên lý luận chính trị). Tài liệu dung tập huẩn giảng dạy năm 2019.

2. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2014) *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Dùng trong đào tạo thạc sỹ, tiến sỹ các ngành KHXN và NV không chuyên ngành Triết học). Nxb Đại học Sư phạm Hà Nội, Hà Nội.

3. Báo cáo phát triển con người Việt Nam các năm 1999, 2011 và 2016

4. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, *Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc* lần thứ VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI và XII, NXB CTQG, Hà Nội

**7. GIÁO TRÌNH:**

1. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2019), *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Sử dụng trong các trường đại học không chuyên lý luận chính trị). Tài liệu dung tập huẩn giảng dạy năm 2019.

2. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2014) *Giáo trình Triết học Mác - Lênin*. (Dùng trong đào tạo thạc sỹ, tiến sỹ các ngành KHXN và NV không chuyên ngành Triết học). Nxb Đại học Sư phạm Hà Nội, Hà Nội.

3. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2003), *Triết học.* 3 quyển, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội,

4. Hội đồng Trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh (1999), *Giáo trình triết học Mác-Lênin*, NXB CTQG, HN

5. Hội đồng Trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh (2010), *Giáo trình triết học Mác-Lênin (Tái bản có sửa chữa*), NXB CTQG, HN

6. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh,  *Giáo trình cao cấp lý luận chính trị - triết học Mác – Lênin,* Nxb Lý luận Chính trị, H.2018.

**8. TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO:**

1. A.P.Séptulin, *Bàn về mối lien hệ lẫn nhau của các phạm trù trong triết học mácxít,* NXBSự thật, Hà Nội, 1961.

2. A.P.Séptulin, *Phương pháp nhận thức biện chứng,* Nxb. Tiến Bộ và Nxb.Sự thật, Hà Nội, 1989.

*3. Bách khoa toàn thư triết học,* Nxb. Từ điển Xô Viết, in lần thứ 2, Mátxcơva, 1989 (tiếng Nga).

4. Báo cáo phát triển con người Việt Nam các năm 1999, 2011 và 2016.

5. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen, Chống Đuy-Rinh;Biện chứng của tự nhiên, Toàn tập, tập 20, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 1995.

6. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen, Luận cương về Phoi-ơ-Bắc; Hệ tư tưởng Đức, Toàn tập, tập 3, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 1995.

7. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen, Phê phán cương lĩnh Gôta, Toàn tập, tập 19, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 1995.

8. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen, Tuyên ngôn Đảng cộng sản, Toàn tập, tập 4, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 1995.

9. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, *Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc* lần thứ VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI và XII, NXB CTQG, Hà Nội.

10. V.I Lênin, Ba nguồn gốc và ba bộ phận cấu thành chủ nghĩa Mác, toàn tập, tập 23, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005

11. V.I Lênin, Bút ký triết học, Toàn tập, tập 29, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005.

12. V.I Lênin, Nhà nước và cách mạng, toàn ập, tập 33, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005.

13. V.I Lênin,Chủ nghĩa duy vật và chủ nghĩa kinh nghiệm phê phán, Toàn tập, tập 8, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005.

**9. PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐÁNH GIÁ HỌC PHẦN:**

- Thang điểm: 10

- Cơ cấu điểm:

+ Điểm đánh giá của giảng viên: 10%

+ Điểm bài tập lớn: 30%

+ Điểm thi học phần: 60% (Bài thi học phần theo hình thức tự luân)

- Điều kiện dự thi học phần:

+ Phải có điểm đánh giá chuyên cần đạt 5 điểm trở lên.

+ Phải có bài tập lớn

**10. GIẢNG VIÊN GIẢNG DẠY**

Giảng viên phụ trách: TS Nguyễn Văn Hậu

Giảng viên giảng dạy: 1. TS Phạm Văn Sinh

2. TS Lê Ngọc Thông

3. TS Lê Thị Hồng

4. TS Nghiêm Thị Châu Giang

5. ThS Nguyễn Văn Thuân

6. Ths Nguyễn Thị Lê Thư

7.ThS Nguyễn Mai Lan

8. ThS Võ Thị Hồng Hạnh

9.TS Nguyễn Văn Hậu

*Hà nội, ngày 30 tháng 8 năm 2019*

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Trưởng Bộ môn**  **(Đã ký)**  **TS Nguyễn Thị Hào** | **Hiệu trưởng**  **(Đã ký)**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  **TRƯỜNG ĐH KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** | **CỘNG HÒA XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM**  **Độc lập – Tự do – Hạnh phúc**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** |

**ĐỀ CƯƠNG CHI TIẾT HỌC PHẦN**

TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO: **ĐẠI HỌC**  LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO: **CHÍNH QUY**

**1. TÊN HỌC PHẦN**

Tiếng Việt: KINH TẾ CHÍNH TRỊ MÁC- LÊNIN

Tiếng Anh: Political economics of marxism and leninism

Mã học phần: LLNL1106 Số tín chỉ: 02

**2. BỘ MÔN PHỤ TRÁCH GIẢNG DẠY:** NHỮNG NGUYÊN LÝ CƠ BẢN CỦA CHỦ NGHĨA MÁC-LÊNIN

**3. ĐIỀU KIỆN HỌC TRƯỚC:** Sinh viên phải hoàn thành xong học phần Triết học Mác -Lênin

**4. MÔ TẢ HỌC PHẦN**

Học phần này gồm 6 chương: Trong đó Chương 1 bàn về đối tượng, phương pháp nghiên cứu và chức năng của kinh tế chính trị Mác- Lênin. Chương 2 đến chương 6 trình bày nội dung cốt lõi của Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin theo mục tiêu của môn học. Cụ thể các vấn đề như; hàng hóa, thị trường và vai trò của các chủ thể tham gia thị trường; Sản xuất giá trị thặng dư trong nền kinh tế thị trường; Cạnh tranh và độc trong nền kinh tế thị trường.; Kinh tế thị trường định hướng XHCN và các quan hệ lợi ích kinh tế; Công nghiệp hóa, Hiện đại hóa và hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế của Việt Nam.

**5. MỤC TIÊU HỌC PHẦN**

Trang bị cho sinh viên những tri thức cơ bản, cốt lõi của Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin trong bối cảnh phát triển kinh tế của đất nước và thế giới ngày nay. Đảm bảo tính cơ bản, hệ thống, khoa học, cập nhật tri thức mới, gắn với thực tiễn, tính sáng tạo, kỹ năng, tư duy, phẩm chất người học, tính liên thông, khắc phục trùng lắp, tăng cường tích hợp và giảm tải, lược bớt những nội dung không còn phù hợp hoặc những nội dung mang tính kinh viện đối với các trường Cao đẳng, Đại học không chuyên lý luận. Trên cơ sở đó hình thành tư duy, kỹ năng phân tích, đánh giá và nhận diện bản chất của các quan hệ lợi ích kinh tế trong phát triển kinh tế xã hội của đất nước và góp phàn giúp sinh viên xay dựng trách nhiệm xã hội phù hợp trong vị trí việc làm và thực tiễn cuộc sống của sinh viên sau này. Góp phần xây dựng lập trường, ý thức hệ tư tưởng của chủ nghĩa Mác-Lênin đối với sinh viên.

**6. PHÂN BỔ THỜI GIAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***STT*** | ***Nội dung*** | ***Tổng số***  ***tiết*** | ***Trong đó*** | | ***Ghi chú*** |
| ***Lý thuyết*** | ***Bài tập, thảo luận, kiểm tra*** |
| 1  2  3  4 | Chương 1  Chương 2  Chương 3  Chương 4  Chương 5  Chương 6 | 2  5  5  4  5  4 | 1  3  3  2  3  4 | 1  2  2  2  2  2 | Phòng học có máy chiếu để trình bày và cho sinh viên thuyết trình, thảo luận. |
|  | **Cộng** | **25** | **14** | **11** | **Tiết 60 phút** |

**CHƯƠNG 1 – ĐỐI TƯỢNG, PHƯƠNG PHÁP NGHIÊN CỨU VÀ CHỨC NĂNG CỦA KINH TẾ CHÍNH TRỊ MÁC –LÊNIN**

Chương này cung cấp những tri thức cơ bản về sự ra đời và phát triển của môn học Kinh tế chính trị Mác- Lênin, về đối tượng nghiên cứu, phương pháp nghiên cứu và chức nwng của khoa học Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin trong nhận thức cũng như trong thực tiễn. Trên cơ sở lĩnh hội một cách hệ thống những tri thức như vậy, sinh viên hiểu được sự hình thành, phát triển nội dung khoa học của môn học Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Leenin, biết được phương pháp nghiên cứu và ý nghĩa của môn học đối với bản thân khi tham gia các hoạt động kinh tế - xã hội.

1.1 KHÁI QUÁT SỰ HÌNH THÀNH VÀ PHÁT TRIỂN CỦA KINH TẾ CHÍNH TRỊ MÁC-LÊNIN

1.2 ĐỐI TƯỢNG VÀ PHƯƠNG PHPS NGHIÊN CỨ CỦ KINH TẾ CHÍNH TRỊ MÁC-LÊNIN

1.2.1 Đối tượng nghiên cứu củ kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin

1.2.2 Phương pháp nghiên cứu của kinh tế chính trị mác-Lênin

1.3 CHỨC NĂNG CỦA KINH TẾ CHÍNH TRỊ MÁC-LÊNIN

1.3.1 Chức năng nhận thức

1.3.2 chức năng thực tiễn

1.3.3 chức năng tư tưởng

1.3.4 Chức năng phương pháp luận

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Robert B.Ekelund, JR và Robert F.Hebert (2003), *Lịch sử các học thuyết kinh tế*, Bản tiếng Việt, NXB thống kê, H.

2. Viện Kinh tế chính trị học,Học viện Chính trị Quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh (2018), *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị -Mác-Lênin*, NXB Lý luận chính trị, H

3. C.Mác – Ph. Ănghen: *Toàn tập, tập 20, 23*, NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, 1994, H

4. V.I Lênin: *Toàn tập, tập* 3, NXB Tiến bộ Maxcova. 1976, M

**CHƯƠNG 2 - HÀNG HÓA, THỊ TRƯỜNG VÀ VI TRÒ CỦA CÁC CHỦ THỂ THAM GIA THỊ TRƯỜNG**

Chương này nhằm cung cấp một cách có hệ thống về lý luận giá trị lao động của C.Mác thông qua các phạm trù cơ bản về hàng hóa, tiền tệ, giá cả, quy luật giá trị, tính 2 mặt của lao động sản xuất hàng hóa, năng suất lao động… giúp cho việc nhận thức một cách căn bản cơ sở lý luận của các mối quan hệ kinh tế trong nền kinh tế thị trường. Trên cơ sở đó góp phần vận dụng để hình thành tư duy và kỹ năng thưc hiện hành vi kinh tế phù hợp với yêu cầu khách quan của công dân khi tham gia các hoạt động kinh tế -xã hội nói chung. Đây cũng là căn cứ mà trên cơ sở đó có thể tiếp tục bổ sung, làm sâu sắc thêm một số khía cạnh lý luận của C.Mác về hàng hóa, giá trị hàng hóa mà thời của mình, do hoàn cảnh khách quan, C.Mác chưa có điều kiện để nghiên cứu một cách sau sắc như trong điều kiện nền kinh tế thị trường với những quy luật củ kinh tế thị trường hiện nay.

2.1 LÝ LUẬN CỦA C.MÁC VỀ SẢN XUÁT HÀNG HÓ VÀ HÀNG HÓA

2.1.1 sản xuất hàng hóa

2.1.2 Hàng hóa

2.1.3 Tiền

2.1.4 dịch vụ và một số hang hóa đặc biệt

2.2 THỊ TRƯỜNG VÀ VAI TRÒ CỦA CÁC CHỦ THỂ THAM GIA THỊ TRƯỜNG

2.2.1 Thị trường

2.2.2 vai trò của một số chủ thể tham gia thị trường

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. C.Mác – Ph.Ănghen: *Toàn tập, tập 20* NXB CTQG , 1994

2. C.Mác –Ănghen: *Toàn tập, tập 23*, NXB CTQG, 1994

3. David Begg, Stanley Fisher, Rudiger Doinbusch, *Kinh tế học*, NXB Giáo dục, HN 1992

**CHƯƠNG 3 - GIÁ TRỊ THẶNG DƯ TRONG NỀN KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG**

Chương này sẽ trang bị cho sinh viên hệ thống tri thức lý luận về sản xuất giá trị thặng dư của C.Mác trong điều kiện nền kinh tế thị trường tự do cạnh tranh tư bản chủ nghĩa, hình thái đầu tiên của kinh tế thị trường trong lịch sử phát triển của nhân loại, và các quan hệ lợi ích cơ bản nhất thông qua phân phối giá trị mới do lao động tạo ra giữa các chủ thể cơ bản trong nền kinh tế thị trường tư bản chủ nghĩa. Trên cơ sở đó, vận dụng để phân tích và bổ sung làm rõ hơn lý luận về các quan hệ lợi ích trong nền kinh tế thị trường- một khía cạnh cốt lõi trong đối tượng nghiên cứu của kinh tế chính trị giúp cho sinh viên xxs định được lợi ích của mình, hình thành kỹ năng biết tự bảo vệ lợi ích chính đáng của mình trong quan hệ với lợi ích của người lao động, với lợi ích xã hội khi khởi nghiệp hoặc khi tham gia các hoạt động kinh tế -xã hội trong bối cảnh xx hội hiện đại.

3.1 LÝ LUẬN CỦA C.MÁC VỀ GIÁ TRỊ THẶNG DƯ

3.1.1 nguồn gốc của gía trị thặng dư

3.1.2 Bản chất của giá trị thặng dư

3.1.3 Các phương pháp sản xuát giá trị thặng dư trong nền kinh tế thị trường TBCN

3.2 TÍCH LŨY TƯ BẢN

3.3 CÁC HÌNH THỨC BIỂU HIỆN CỦA GIÁ TRỊ THẶNG DƯ TRONG NỀN KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG

3.3.1 Lợi nhuận

3.3.2 Lợi tức

3.3.3 Địa tô tư bản chủ nghĩa

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1.Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2016*), Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII,*NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, tr 55- 132

2. C.Mác và Ph.Ănghen: *Toàn tập, tập 23*, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội 2002, trang 250-296.

2. C.Mác và Ph.Ănghen*: Toàn tập, tập 25*, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội 2002, Phần I, trang 47- 83.

**CHƯƠNG 4 - CẠNH TRANH VÀ ĐỘC QUYỀN TRONG NỀN KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG**

Nội dung trong chương 4 cung cấp hệ thống tri tức về mối quan hệ giữa cạnh tranh và độc quyền và lý luận về độc quyền và độc quyền nhà nước trên cơ sở hững luận điểm lý luận của V.I. Lênin sau khi sinh viên đã được trang bị hệ thống tri thức lý luận cốt lõi của C.Mác trong các chương trước. Thông qua đó, sinh viên có thể hiểu được bối cảnh nền kinh tế thé giới đang có những đặc trưng mới và hình thành được tư duy thích ứng với bối cảnh thế giới luôn có nhiều thách thức.

4.1. QUAN HỆ GIỮA CẠNH TRANH VÀ ĐỘC QUYỀN TRONG NỀN KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG

4.2. ĐỘC QUYỀN VÀ ĐỘC QUYỀN NHÀ NƯỚC TRONG NỀN KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG

4.2.1. Lý luận của V.I.Lênin về độc quyền trong nền kinh tế thịtrường

4.2.2. Lý luận của V.I.Lênin về độc quyền nhà nức trong chủ nghĩa tư bản

**Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:**

1. Hội đồng trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các bộ môn khoa học Mác - Lênin, Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, 2004.

2. C. Mác và Ph.Ăngghen: *Toàn tập*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội,  
1999, t.25, phần I.

3.V.I.Lênin: *Toàn tập*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, 2005, t.27.  
4. V.I.Lênin: *Toàn tập, Nxb*. Chính trị quốc gia, 2005, t.31.

**CHƯƠNG 5 - KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG ĐỊNH HƯỚNG XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VÀ CÁC QUAN HỆ LỢI ÍCH KINH TẾ Ở VIỆT NAM**

Sau khi nghiên cứu một cách hệ thống lý luận của C.Mác – Ph.Ănghen và V.I.Lênin về các quan hệ xã hội của sản xuất và trao đổi trong chủ nghĩa tư bản, đó cũng thực chất là hệ thống lý luận về các quan hệ lợi ích trong nền kinh tế thị trường tư bản chủ nghĩa, nội dung chương 5 cung cấp tri thức lý luận căn bản về nền kinh tế thị trường mang đăck thù phát triển của Việt Nam và vấn đề quan hệ lợi ích và đảm bảo hài hòa các quan hệ lợi ích trong phát triển ở Việt Nam. Thông qua đó sinh viên sẽ hiểu được lý do khách quan phát triển kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa và hình thành kỹ năng tư duy vận dụng lý luận nền tảng vào giải quyết các vấn đề kinh tế thị trường.

5.1. KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG ĐỊNH HƯỚNG XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA Ở VIỆT NAM

5.1.1. Khái niệm kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt  
Nam

5.1.2. Tính tất yếu khách quan của việc phát triển kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam

5.1.3. Đặc trưng của kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở  
Việt Nam

5.2. HOÀN THIỆN THỂ CHẾ KINH TẾ THỊ TRƯỜNG ĐỊNH HƯỚNG  
XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA Ở VIỆT NAM

5.2.1. Sự cần thiết phải hoàn thiện thể chế kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam

5.2.2. Nội dung hoàn thiện thể chế kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam

5.3. CÁC QUAN HỆ LỢI LỢI ÍCH KINH TẾ Ở VIỆT NAM

5.3.1. Lợi ích kinh tế và quan hệ lợi ích kinh tế

5.3.2. Vai trò của nhà mước trong đảm bảo hài hòa các quan hệ lợi ích

**Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:**

1. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Báo cáo tổng kết một số vấn đề lý luận – thự tiễn qua ba mươi năm đổi mới (1986-20`6)*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.

2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội 2016.

3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), Nghị quyết số 11-NQ/TW ngày 03/06/2017 về “*Hoàn thiện thể chế kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa”*.

**CHƯƠNG 6 - CÔNG NGHIỆP HÓA, HIỆN ĐẠI HÓA VÀ HỘI NHẬP KINH TẾ QUỐC TẾ CỦA VIỆT NAM**

Nội dung của chương 6 sẽ cung cấp hệ thống tri thức về công nghiệp hóa, hiện đại hóa ở Việt Nam trong bối cảnh cách mạng công nghiệp lần thứ tư (4.0). Việt Nam đang ở trong lộ trình hội nhập ngày càng sâu rộng vào nền kinh tế toàn cầu. Nội dung chương 6 cũng cung cấp có hệ thống tri thức về hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế, tác động của hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế và việc xây dựng nền kinh tế Độc lập- Tự chủ trong bối cảnh hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế.

6.1. CÔNG NGHIỆP HÓA, HIỆN ĐẠI HÓA Ở VIỆT NAM

6.1.1.Khái quát cách mạng công nghiệp và công nghiệp hóa

6.1.2. Tính tất yếu khách quan và nội dung của công nghiệp hóa, hiện đại hóa ở Việt Nam

6.1.3. Công nghiệp hóa, hiện đại hóa ở Việt Nam trong bối cảnh cách mạng công nghiệp lần thư tư

6.2. HỘI NHẬP KINH TẾ QUỐC TẾ CỦA VIỆT NAM

6.2.1. Khái niệm và nội dung hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế

6.2.2. Tác động của hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế đến phát triển của Việt Nam

6.2.3. Phương hướng nâng cao hiệu quả hội nhập kinh tế quốc tế trong phát triển của Việt Nam

**Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:**

1.Bộ Giáo dục và đào tạo (2019) *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác Lênin (chương trình không chuyên). Tài liệu tập huấn chuyên ngành tháng 8 năm 2019*

2. Chỉ thị 6/CT-TTg (2017) “về việc tăng cường năng lực tiếp cận cuộc cách mạng công nghiệp lần thứ tư.

3. Jeremy Rifkin (2014), *cuộc cách mạng công nghiệp lần thứ ba*, bản dịch tiếng Việt, Nxb Lao động xã hội, Hà Nội.

**7. GIÁO TRÌNH**

1. Bộ Giáo dục và đào tạo (2019), *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin*, (Dành cho bậc Đại học không chuyên lý luạn chính trị), tì liệu phục vụ tập huán chuyên ngành tháng 8 năm 2019.

2. Hội đồng Trung ương biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các bộ môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Mình ( 2013), *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin*, NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, H,

**8. TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO**

1. C. Mác và Ph.Ăngghen: *Toàn tập*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, 1999, t.25, phần I.Chỉ thị 6/CT-TTg (2017) “về việc tăng cường năng lực tiếp cận cuộc cách mạng công nghiệp lần thứ tư.

2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Báo cáo tổng kết một số vấn đề lý luận – thực tiễn qua ba mươi năm đổi mới (1986-20`6)*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.

3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), Nghị quyết số 11-NQ/TW ngày 03/06/2017 về “*Hoàn thiện thể chế kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa”*.

4. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội 2016.

5. Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác Lênin (chương trình không chuyên).

6. Hội đồng trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các bộ môn khoa học Mác - Lênin, Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, *Giáo trình Kinh tế chính trị Mác-Lênin*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, 2004.

7. Jeremy Rifkin (2014) cuộc cách mạng công nghiệp lần thứ ba, bản dịch tiếng Việt, Nxb Lao động xã hội, Hà Nội.

8.V.I.Lênin: Toàn tập, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, 2005, t.27.  
V.I.Lênin: Toàn tập, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, 2005, t.31.

**9. PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐÁNH GIÁ HỌC PHẦN**

- Thang điểm: 10

- Cơ cấu điểm:

+ Điểm đánh giá của giảng viên: 10%

+ Điểm bài tập lớn: 30%

+ Điểm thi học phần: 60% (Bài thi học phần theo hình thức tự luân)

- Điều kiện dự thi học phần:

+ Phải có điểm đánh giá chuyên cần đạt 5 điểm trở lên

+ Phải có bài tập lớn

**10. GIẢNG VIÊN GIẢNG DẠY**

Giảng viên phụ trách: TS. Nguyễn Thị Hào

Giảng viên giảng dạy:

1 .PGS.TS Đặng Văn Thắng

2. GS.TS Mai Ngọc Cường

3. PGS.TS Tô Đức Hạnh

4. PGS.TS Trần Việt Tiến

5. PGS.TS Đào Thị Phương Liên

6. TS Đỗ Thị Kim Hoa

7. PGS. TS Nguyễn Thị Thanh Hiếu

8. TS Nguyễn Thị Hào

9.TS Mai Lan Hương

10. TS Nguyễn Văn Hậu

11. Th.S Nguyễn Mai Lan

12. ThS Võ Thị Hồng Hạnh

13. Th Trần Thị Thanh Hương

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | *Hà Nội, ngày 23 tháng 09 năm 2019* |
| **TRƯỞNG BỘ MÔN**  **(Đã ký)**  **TS. Nguyễn Thị Hào** |  | **HIỆU TRƯỞNG**  **(Đã ký)**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO**  **TRƯỜNG ĐH KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN** | **CỘNG HÒA XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM**  **Độc lập – Tự do – Hạnh phúc** |

**ĐỀ CƯƠNG CHI TIẾT HỌC PHẦN**

**TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO**: ĐẠI HỌC **LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO**: CHÍNH QUY

**1. TÊN HỌC PHẦN:**

Tiếng Việt: CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI KHOA HỌC

Tiếng Anh: SCIENTIFIC SOCIALISM

Mã học phần: LLNL1107 Tổng số tín chỉ: 02.

**2. BỘ MÔN PHỤ TRÁCH GIẢNG DẠY**: NHỮNG NGUYÊN LÝ CƠ BẢN CHỦ NGHĨA MÁC - LÊNIN.

**3. ĐIỀU KIỆN HỌC TRƯỚC**: Sinh viên phải hoàn thành xong học phần Triết học Mác – Lênin và Kinh tế chính trị học Mác – Lênin.

**4. MÔ TẢ HỌC PHẦN:**

Nội dung học phần gồm 7 chương: chương 1, trình bày những vấn đề cơ bản có tính nhập môn của Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học nhằm làm rõ quá trình hình thành, phát triển của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học; đối tượng nghiên cứu, phương pháp nghiên cứu và ý nghĩa của việc nghiên cứu Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học. Từ chương 2 đến chương 7 trình bày những vấn đề lý luận cơ bản của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học như; Sứ mệnh lịch sứ của giai cấp công nhân, Chủ nghĩa xã hội và thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội, nghiên cứu vấn đề dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa và Nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa; cơ cấu xã hội- giai cấp và liên minh giai cấp, tầng lớp trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội; những vấn đề dân tộc và tôn giáo, vấn đề gia đình trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội.

**5. MỤC TIÊU HỌC PHẦN**

Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học là một trong ba bộ phận cấu thành của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin và là một trong những môn học bắt buộc trong hệ thống giáo dục đại học ở nước ta. Nghiên cứu học phần chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học là nhằm hiểu rõ quá trình hình thành và phát triển của hình thái kinh tế - xã hội cộng sản chủ nghĩa, nhận thức rõ sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân trong quá trình giải phóng con người và xã hội, cũng như quá trình xây dựng xã hội mới tốt đẹp. Nghiên cứu chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học cũng chính là khẳng định tính đúng đắn con đường đi lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam hiện nay.

**6. PHÂN BỔ THỜI GIAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***STT*** | ***Nội dung*** | ***Tổng số***  ***tiết*** | ***Trong đó*** | | ***Ghi chú*** |
| ***Lý thuyết*** | ***Bài tập, thảo luận, kiểm tra*** |
| 1  2  3  4 | Chương 1  Chương 2  Chương 3  Chương 4  Chương 5  Chương 6  Chương 7 | 2  4  4  4  4  4  3 | 1  2  3  3  2  2  2 | 1  2  1  1  2  2  1 | Phòng học có máy chiếu để trình bày và cho sinh viên thuyết trình, thảo luận. |
|  | **Cộng** | **25** | **15** | **11** | **Tiết 60 phút** |

**CHƯƠNG 1- NHẬP MÔN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI KHOA HỌC**

Chương này nhằm giúp sinh viên có kiến thức cơ bản về sự ra đời, các giai đoạn phát triển, đối tượng, phương pháp và ý nghĩa của việc học tập nghiên cứu chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học, một trong ba bộ phận hợp thành chủ nghĩa Mác –Lênin. Trên cơ sở đó, sinh viên có khả năng luận chứng được khách thể và đối tượng nghiên cứu của một khoa học và của một vấn đề nghiên cứu, phân biệt được những vấn đề chính trị trong đời sống xã hội hiện thực. Giúp sinh viên có thái độ tích cực với việc học tập các môn lý luận chính trị, có niềm tin lý tưởng và sự thành công của công cuộc đổi mới do Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam lãnh đạo.

1. SỰ RA ĐỜI CỦA CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI KHOA HỌC

1.1. Hoàn cảnh lịch sử ra đời của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học

1. 2. Vai trò cuả Các Mác và Phridrich Ăngghen

2. CÁC GIAI ĐOẠN PHÁT TRIỂN CƠ BẢN CỦA CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI KHOA HỌC

2.1. C. Mác và Ph. Ăngghen phát triển chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học

2.2 V.I. Lênin vận dụng và phát triển chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học trong điều kiện mới

2.3 Sự vận dụng và phát triển sáng tạo của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học từ sau khi Leenin qua đời

3. ĐỐI TƯỢNG, PHƯƠNG PHÁP VÀ Ý NGHĨA CỦA VIỆC NGHIÊN CỨU CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI KHOA HỌC

3.1. Đối tượng nghiên cứu của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học

3.2. Phương pháp nghiên cứu của chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học

3.3 Ý nghĩa của việc nghiên cứu chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Bộ Giáo dục và đào tạo ( 2006), *Giáo trình Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học*, NXB Giáo dục và đào tạo

2. Hội đồng trung ương biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ chí Minh (2002), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội kho học*, NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà nội.

3. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Mình (2018), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học, ”Chương trình cao cấp lý luạn chính trị”*, NXB Lý luận Chính trị

4. Pedro P.Geiger (2015), *Chủ nghĩa tư bản, Chủ nghĩa quốc tế và chủ nghĩa xã hội thời toàn cầu,* tạp chí thông tin khoa học lý luận số 3 (4)

**CHƯƠNG 2 - SỨ MỆNH LỊCH SỬ CỦA GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN**

Chương này giúp sinh viên nắm được những quan điểm cơ bản chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin về giai cấp công nhân và sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân, nội dung, biểu hiện và ý nghĩa của sứ mệnh lịch sử đó trong bối cảnh hiện nay. Qua đó sinh viên sẽ biết vận dụng phương pháp luận và các phương pháp chuyên ngành chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học vào việc phân tích sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân Việt Nam trong tiến trình cách mạng ở nước ta. Góp phần xây dựng và củng cố niềm tin khoa học, lập trường giai cấp công nhân đối với sự nghiệp xây dựng chủ nghĩa xã hội trên thế giới cũng như ở Việt Nam.

1. QUAN NIỆM GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN VÀ SỨ MỆNH LỊCH SỬ CỦA GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN

1.1 Quan niệm và đặc điểm của giai cấp công nhân

1.2 Nội dung và đặc điểm sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân

1.3 Điều kiện khách quan và nhân tố chủ quan quy định sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân

2. GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN VÀ THỰC HIỆN SỨ MỆNH LỊCH SỬ CỦA GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN TRONG THỜI ĐẠI NGÀY NAY

2.1. Quan niệm về giai cấp công nhân trong thời đại ngày nay

2.2. Thực hiện sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân trong thời đại ngày nay

3. SỨ MỆNH LỊCH SỬ CỦA GIAI CẤP CÔNG NHÂN VIỆT NAM

3.1 Đặc điểm của giai cấp công nhân Việt Nam

3.2. Sứ mệnh lịch sử của giai cấp công nhân Việt Nam trong các thời kỳ cách mạng

3.3. Định hướng xây dựng giai cấp công nhân Việt Nam hiện nay

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1.Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam( 2008), *Văn kiện Hội nghị làn thứ sáu Ban chấp hành Trung ương khóa X*, NXB CTQG –ST, Hà nội

2. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2011) (2016), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XI, XII*, NXB CTQG-ST, Hà nội

3. Hội đồng trung ương biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ chí Minh (2002), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội kho học*, NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà nội.

4. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Mình (2018), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học, ”Chương trình cao cấp lý luạn chính trị”*, NXB Lý luận Chính trị

5. Hoàng Chí Bảo, Nguyễn Viết Thông, Bùi Đình Bôn (2010), *Một số vấn đề lý luận về giai cấp công nhân Việt Nam trong điều kiện kinh tế thị trường, đẩy mạnh CNH-HĐH và hội nhập quốc tế,* NXB Lao động, Hà Nội.

**CHƯƠNG 3 - CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI VÀ THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CNXH**

Chương này giúp sinh viên viên nắm được kiến thức cơ bản những quan điểm của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin về chủ nghĩa xã hội. Thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội và sự vận dụng sáng tạo của Đảng ta vào điều kiện cụ thể ở Việt Nam. Giúp sinh viên bước đầu biết vận dụng những trị thức có được vào phân tích những vấn đề cơ bản về chủ nghĩa xã hội và con đường đi lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam. Trên cơ sở đó giúp sinh viên khẳng định niềm tin vào chế độ xã hội chủ nghĩa, luôn tin tưởng và ủng hộ đường lối đổi mới theo định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa dưới sự lãnh đạo của Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam.

1. CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI

1.1 Chủ nghĩa xã hội giai đoạn đầu cảu hình thái kinh tế - xã hội Cộng sản chủ nghĩa

1.2 Điều kiện ra đời của chủ nghĩa xã hội

1.3 Những đặc trưng cơ bản của chủ nghĩa xã hội

2 THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI

2.1 Tính tất yếu khách quan cảu thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội

2.2 Đặc điểm thời kỳ quá độ lê chủ nghĩa xã hội

3. QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI Ở VIỆT NAM

3.1 Quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội bỏ qua chế độ tư bản chủ nghĩa

3.2 Những đặc trưng của chủ nghĩa xã hội và phương hướng xây dựng chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (1991), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội*, NXB Sự thật, Hà nội.

2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2011), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội (Bổ sung và phát triển năm 2011*), NXB Sự thật, Hà nội.

**3.** . Hội đồng trung ương biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác-Lênin và Tư tưởng Hồ chí Minh (2002), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội kho học*, NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà nội.

4. GS.TS Phùng Hữu Phú, GS.TS Lê Hữu Nghĩa, GS.TS Vũ Văn Hiền, PGS.TS Nguyễn Viết Thông ( 2016), *Một số vấn đề lý luận – thực tiễn về chủ nghĩa xã hội và con đường đi lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam qua 30 năm đổi mới,* NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà nội.

5. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Mình (2018), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học, ”Chương trình cao cấp lý luạn chính trị”*, NXB Lý luận Chính trị

**CHƯƠNG 4 - DÂN CHỦ XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VÀ NHÀ NƯỚC XHCN**

Chương này nhằm giúp sinh viên nhận thức đầy đủ và đúng bản chất của nền dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa và nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa nói chung ở Việt Nam nói riêng. Sinh viên có khả năng vận dụng lý luận về dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa và nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa vào việc phân tích những vấn đề thực tiễn liên quan, trước hết là trong công việc, nhiệm vụ của cá nhân. Giúp sinh viên khẳng định bản chất tiến bộ của nền dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa, nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa; có thái độ phê phán những quan điểm sai trái phủ nhận tính chất tiến bộ của nền dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa, nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa nói chung, ở Việt Nam nói riêng.

1. DÂN CHỦ VÀ DÂN CHỦ XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA
   1. Dân chủ và sự ra đời, phát triển của dân chủ
   2. Dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa
2. NHÀ NƯỚC XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA
   1. Sự ra đời, bản chất, chức năng của nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa
   2. Mối quan hệ giữa dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa và nhà nước xã hội chủ nghĩa
3. XÂY DỰNG CHẾ ĐỘ DÂN CHỦ XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VÀ NHÀ NƯỚC PHÁP QUYỀN XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM
   1. Dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa Việt Nam
   2. Nhà nước pháp quyền xã hội chủ nghĩa Việt Nam
   3. Phát huy dân chủ, xây dựng Nhà nước pháp quyền xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Hoàng Chí Bảo, Thái Ninh(1991), *Dân chủ tư sản và dân chủ xã hội chủ nghĩa*, NXB Sự thật,Hà nội**.**

2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (1991), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội*, NXB Sự thật, Hà nội

3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2011), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội (Bổ sung và phát triển năm 2011*), NXB Sự thật, Hà nội.

4. Học viện chính trị Quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh ( 2014), *Giáo trình cao cáp lý luận chính trị, tập 3 – Chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học,* NXB Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà nội

5.Đào Trí Úc (2015), *Giáo trình Nhà nước pháp quyền*, NXB Đại học Quốc gia Hà Nội

**CHƯƠNG 5- CƠ CẤU XÃ HỘI - GIAI CẤP VÀ LIÊN MINH GIAI CẤP, TẦNG LỚP TRONG TKQĐ LÊN CNXH.**

Chương này nhằm trang bị cho sinh viên những kiến thức nền tảng về cơ cấu xã hội –giai cấp và liên minh giai cấp, tầng lớp trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội. Giúp sinh viên có kỹ năng nhận diện những biến đổi trong cơ cấu xã hội-giai cấp và nội dung liên minh giai cấp ở nước ta trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội. Từ đó sinh viên nhận thức được về tầm quan trọng và thấy được sự cần thiết phải góp sức tăng cường xây dựng khổi liên minh giai cấp vững mạnh trong sự nghiệp xây dựng đất nước theo định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam.

1. CƠ CẤU XÃ HỘI- GIAI CẤP TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI

1.1 Khái niệm và vị trí của cơ cấu xã hội- giai cấp trong cơ cấu xã hội

1.2 Sự biến đổi có tính qui luật của cơ cấu xã hội- giai cấp trong thời kỳ quá độ lên xã hội chủ nghĩa

2. LIÊN MÌNH GIAI CẤP, TẦNG LỚP TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI

3. CƠ CẤU XÃ HỘI – GIAI CẤP VÀ LIÊN MÌNH GIAI CẤP, TẦNG LỚP TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI Ở VIỆT NAM

3.1 Cơ cấu xã hội- giai cấp trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.2. Liên minh giai cấp, tầng lớp trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2008), *Văn kiện Hội nghị lần thứ sáu Ban chấp hành Trung ương khóa X,* NXB CTQG, HN

2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2008), *Văn kiện Hội nghị làn thứ bảy Ban chấp hành Trung ương khóa X*, NXB CTQG, Hà Nội

3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2011), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội (Bổ sung và phát triển năm 2011*), NXB Sự thật, Hà nội

4. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII*, NXB CTQG-ST, Hà nội

5. Tạ Ngọc Tấn (2010), Một số vấn đề về biến đổi cơ cấu xã hội Việt Nam hiện nay, NXB CTQG, Hà nội

**CHƯƠNG 6 - VẤN ĐỀ DÂN TỘC VÀ TÔN GIÁO TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI**

Chương này giúp sinh viên những nắm được quan điểm cơ bản chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin về vấn đề dân tộc, tôn giáo; mối quan hệ dân tộc và tôn giáo và nội dung chính sách dân tộc, tôn giảo của Đảng và Nhà nước Việt Nam. Trên cơ sở đó nhận thức rõ tầm quan trọng của vấn đề dân tộc, tôn giáo đối với sự nghiệp cách mạng của toàn dân ta dưới sự lãnh đạo của Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam. Sinh viên rèn luyện kỹ năng tư duy và năng lực vận dụng những nội dung trong bài học để phân tích, giải thích những vấn đề trong thực tiễn một cách khách quan, có cơ sở khoa học. Giúp sinh viên thấy rõ tính khoa học trong tư tưởng và cách thức giải quyết vấn đề dân tộc, tôn giáo của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin, của Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam; từ đó xác định trách nhiệm của bản thân góp phần tuyên truyền và thực hiện chủ trương, chính sách, pháp luật về dân tộc, tôn giáo của Đảng, Nhà nước.

1. VẤN ĐỀ DÂN TỘC TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI
   1. Chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin và vấn đề của dân tộc
   2. Vấn đề dân tộc và quan hệ dân tộc ở Việt Nam
2. VẤN ĐỀ TÔN GIÁO TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI
   1. Chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin về vấn đề tôn giáo
   2. Tôn giáo ở Việt Nam và chính sách tôn giáo của Đảng và Nhà nước ta hiện nay
3. QUAN HỆ GIỮA DÂN TỘC VÀ TÔN GIÁO Ở VIỆT NAM
   1. Đặc điểm quan hệ dân tộc và tôn giáo ở Việt Nam
   2. Định hướng giải quyết mối quan hệ dân tộc và tôn giáo ở Việt Nam hiện nay

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

**1.** Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2011), *Cương lĩnh xây dựng đất nước trong thời kỳ quá độ lên Chủ nghĩa xã hội (Bổ sung và phát triển năm 2011*), NXB Sự thật, Hà nội

2. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII*, NXB CTQG-ST, Hà nội

3. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2003), *Nghị Quyết số 24 –NQ/TU, ngày 12/3/2003 của BCHTU khóa IX về công tác dân tộc,* NXB CTQG, Hà nội.

4. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2003), *Nghị Quyết số 25 –NQ/TU, ngày 12/3/2003 của BCHTU khóa IX về công tác tôn giáo*, NXB CTQG, Hà nội.

5. Ban tuyên giáo Trung ương (2018*), Vấn đề dân tộc và chính sách dân tộc*, NXB CTQG, Hà nội.

6. Quốc Hội nước Cộng hòa xã hội chủ nghĩa Việt Nam(khóa XIV), *Luật tín ngưỡng, tôn giáo, Luật số 02/2016QH14*, ngày18/11/2016.

7. Dương Xuân Ngọc (2017), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học, dùng cho hệ đào tạo cao cấp lý luận chính trị,* NXB CAND.

**CHƯƠNG 7- VẤN ĐỀ GIA ĐÌNH TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN**

**CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI**

Chương này giúp sinh viên nắm được những quan điểm cơ bản của chủ nghĩa Mác-Lênin, tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam về gia đình , xây dựng gia đình trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội, xây dựng gia đình ở Việt Nam hiện nay. Giúp sinh viên có kỹ năng, phương pháp khoa học trong nghiên cứu những vấn đề lý luận và thực tiễn liên quan đến vấn đề gia đình và xây dựng gia đình, từ đó có nhận thức đúng đắn về vấn đề này. Từ đó sinh viên có thái độ và hành vi đúng đắn trong nhận thức và có trách nhiệm xây dựng gia đình, xây dựng mối quan hệ giữa cá nhân, gia đình và xã hội.

1. **Nội dung của chương**
2. KHÁI NIỆM,VỊ TRÍ VÀ CHỨC NĂNG CỦA GIA ĐÌNH.
   1. Khái niệm gia đình
   2. Vị trí của gia đình trong xã hội
   3. Chức năng cơ bản của gia đình
3. CƠ SỞ XÂY DỰNG GIA ĐÌNH TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI.
   1. Cơ sở của kinh tế-xã hội
   2. Cơ sở của chính trị- xã hội
   3. Cơ sở văn hóa
   4. Chế độ hôn nhân tiến bộ
4. XÂY DỰNG GIA ĐÌNH VIỆT NAM TRONG THỜI KỲ QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI
   1. Những yếu tố tác động đến gia đình Việt Nam trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội
   2. Sự biến đổi của gia đình Việt Nam trong thời kỳ quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII*, NXB CTQG-ST, Hà nội

2. Quốc Hội số 52/2014/QH13, Luật Hôn nhân và gia đình, Ban hành ngày 19/6/2014

3. Chiến lược phát triển Gia đình Việt Nam đến năm 2020, tầm nhìn 2030 – Quyết định số 629/QĐ-TTg của Thủ tướng Chính phủ, ngày 29/5/2012.

4. Đặng Cảnh Khanh, Lê Thị Quý (2007), *Gia đình học*, NXB Thanh niên, Hà Nội

5. Lê Ngọc Văn (2011), *Gia đình và biến đổi gia đình ở Việt Nam*, NXB KHXH, Hà Nội

**7. GIÁO TRÌNH**

1. Bộ giáo dục và đào tạo (2019), Giáo trình Chủ nghĩa Xã hội khoa học (Sử dụng trong các trường Đại học- Hệ không chuyên lý luận chính trị), tài liệu tập huấn giảng dạy năm 2019

2. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2010), *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, 2010

3. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh (1997),  *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học chương trình cao cấp, tập 1, 2,* Nxb Chính trị quốc gia.

4. Hội đồng trung ương chỉ đạo biện soạn giáo trình quốc gia, *Giáo trình chủ nghĩa xã hội khoa học (tái bản có sửa chữa, bổ sung).* Nxb.Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội, 2008.

**8 TÀI LIÊU THAM KHẢO**

1. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen (1995), Chống Đuy-Rinh;Biện chứng của tự nhiên, Toàn tập, tập 20, NXB Chính trị quốc gia.

2. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen (1995), Phê phán cương lĩnh Gôta, Toàn tập, tập 19, NXB Chính trị quốc gia.

3. C.Mác và Ph.Ăngghen (1995), Tuyên ngôn Đảng cộng sản, Toàn tập, tập 4, NXB Chính trị quốc gia.

4. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, *Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc* lần thứ VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI và XII, NXB CTQG, Hà Nội

5.V.I Lênin, Ba nguồn gốc và ba bộ phận cấu thành chủ nghĩa Mác, toàn tập, tập 23, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005.

6.V.I Lênin, Nhà nước và cách mạng, toàn ập, tập 33, NXB Chính trị quốc gia, 2005

**9. PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐÁNH GIÁ HỌC PHẦN**

- Thang điểm: 10

- Cơ cấu điểm:

+ Điểm đánh giá của giảng viên: 10%

+ Điểm bài tập lớn: 30%

+ Điểm thi học phần: 60% (Bài thi kết thúc học phần theo hình thức tự luận)

- Điều kiện dự thi học phần:

+ Phải có điểm đánh giá chuyên cần đạt từ 5 điểm trở lên

+ Phải có bài tạp lớn.

**10. GIẢNG VIÊN GIẢNG DẠY**

Giảng viên phụ trách: 1. TS.Nguyễn Thị Hào

Giảng viên giảng dạy: 1. TS Lê Thị Hồng

2. TS Lê Ngọc Thông

3. TS Nguyễn Thị Thanh Hiếu

4. TS Nguyễn Văn Hậu

5. Ths Nguyễn Thị Lê Thư

6. ThS Võ Thị Hồng Hạnh

7. ThS Nguyễn Văn Thuân

8. ThS Nguyễn Thị Mai Lan

9. Ths Tràn Thị Thanh Hương

*Hà nội, ngày 23 tháng 9 năm 2019*

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Trưởng Bộ môn**  **(Đã ký)**  **TS Nguyễn Thị Hào** | **Hiệu trưởng**  **(Đã ký)**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  **TRƯỜNG ĐH KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** | **CỘNG HÒA XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM**  **Độc lập – Tự do – Hạnh phúc**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** |

**ĐỀ CƯƠNG CHI TIẾT HỌC PHẦN**

TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO: **ĐẠI HỌC** LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO: **CHÍNH QUY**

**1. TÊN HỌC PHẦN:**

Tiếng Việt: Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh

Tiếng Anh: Ho Chi Minh Ideology

Mã học phần: LLTT1101 Số tín chỉ: 2

**2. BỘ MÔN PHỤ TRÁCH GIẢNG DẠY:** Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh

**3. ĐIỀU KIỆN HỌC TRƯỚC:** Những nguyên lý cơ bản của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin.

**4. MÔ TẢ HỌC PHẦN**

Học phần gồm 8 chương: Chương mở đầu và 7 chương nội dung.

* Chương mở đầu: làm rõ đối tượng, phương pháp nghiên cứu và ý nghĩa học tập của môn học Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh
* Chương I: Trình bày cơ sở, quá trình hình thành và phát triển tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh.
* Từ chương II đến chương VII: Trình bày những nội dung cơ bản của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh theo mục tiêu môn học.

**5. MỤC TIÊU HỌC PHẦN**

**5.1. Mục tiêu tổng quát**

Góp phần nâng cao nhận thức cho sinh viên về vai trò, vị trí của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh đối với cách mạng Việt Nam; làm cho tư tưởng của Người ngày càng giữ vai trò chủ đạo trong đời sống tinh thần của thế hệ trẻ nước ta.

Giúp người học củng cố lập trường cách mạng, kiên định mục tiêu lý tưởng độc lập dân tộc gắn liền với CNXH; góp phần giáo dục đạo đức, tư cách, phẩm chất cách mạng, đóng góp thiết thực và hiệu quả cho sự nghiệp cách mạng.

**5.2. Mục tiêu cụ thể**

* Khái quát cuộc đời, sự nghiệp cách mạng vĩ đại của Hồ Chí Minh
* Cung cấp những tri thức cơ bản, có tính hệ thống về tư tưởng, đạo đức, văn hóa của Hồ Chí Minh.
* Tiếp tục cung cấp những kiến thức cơ bản của Chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin
* Làm rõ giá trị to lớn của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh.
* Tạo lập những hiểu biết về nền tảng tư tưởng, kim chỉ nam cho hành động của Đảng và của cách mạng Việt Nam.

**6. NỘI DUNG HỌC PHẦN**

**PHÂN BỐ THỜI GIAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***STT*** | ***Nội dung*** | ***Tổng số***  ***tiết*** | ***Trong đó*** | | ***Ghi chú*** |
| ***Lý thuyết*** | ***Bài tập, thảo luận, kiểm tra*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | Chương mở đầu  Chương 1  Chương 2  Chương 3  Chương 4  Chương 5  Chương 6  Chương 7 | 1  2  4  4  4  3  3  4 | 1  2  3  3  3  2  3  4 | 0  0  1  1  1  1  0  0 | Các lớp lớn khi thảo luận chia nhỏ thành 60 sinh viên. |
|  | **Cộng** | **25** | **21** | **4** |  |

**CHƯƠNG MỞ ĐẦU – ĐỐI TƯỢNG, PHƯƠNG PHÁP NGHIÊN CỨU VÀ Ý NGHĨA HỌC TẬP MÔN TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

Chương này đã nêu và phân tích khái niệm, cấu trúc, nguồn gốc, nội dung và giá trị to lớn của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, từ đó làm rõ đối tượng, nhiệm vụ nghiên cứu, phương pháp nghiên cứu, mối quan hệ với môn Những nguyên lý cơ bản của chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin và môn Đường lối cách mạng của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam.

**CHƯƠNG I – CƠ SỞ, QUÁ TRÌNH HÌNH THÀNH VÀ PHÁT TRIỂN**

**TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

- Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh ra đời là sự kết hợp chặt chẽ giữa điều kiện khách quan và nhân tố chủ quan, trong đó chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin là tiền đề tư tưởng – lý luận trực tiếp và cơ bản nhất, đặt nền tảng về thế giới quan và phương pháp luận cho sự hình thành tư tưởng của Người.

- Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh phát triển qua nhiều giai đoạn, mỗi giai đoạn có bối cảnh riêng, với những sự kiện quan trọng đánh dấu bước chuyển biến, phát triển để cuối cùng trở thành hệ thống tư tưởng toàn diện và sâu sắc về những vấn đề cơ bản của cách mạng Việt Nam.

1.1. Cơ sở hình thành

1.1.1. Cơ sở khách quan

1.1.2. Nhân tố chủ quan

1.2. Quá trình hình thành và phát triển tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh

1.2.1. Thời kỳ trước 1911: Hình thành tư tưởng yêu nước và chí hướng cách mạng.

1.2.2. Thời kỳ 1911 – 1920: Tìm thấy con đường cứu nước, giải phóng dân tộc

1.2.3. Thời kỳ 1921 – 1930: Hình thành cơ bản tư tưởng về cách mạng Việt Nam.

1.2.4. Thời kỳ 1930 – 1945: Vượt qua thử thách, kiên trì giữ vững lập trường cách mạng

1.2.5. Thời kỳ 1945 – 1969: Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh tiếp tục phát triển và hoàn thiện.

1.3. Giá trị tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh

1.3.1. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh soi sáng con đường giải phóng và phát triển dân tộc

1.3.2. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh đối với sự phát triển thế giới

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Trường Chinh (1980), *Chủ tịch Hồ Chí Minh – Sự nghiệp vĩ đại, gương sáng đời đời*, Nxb. Sự thật, Hà Nội, tr.11.
2. Lê Duẩn (1970), *Dưới là cờ vẻ vang của Đảng, vì độc lập, tự do, vì chủ nghĩa xã hội, tiến lên giành những thắng lợi mới*, Nxb. Sự thật, Hà Nội, tr.10
3. Võ Nguyên Giáp (Chủ biên) (1997), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và con đường cách mạng Việt Nam*, Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, tr.11-56.

**CHƯƠNG II – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ VẤN ĐỀ DÂN TỘC VÀ CÁCH MẠNG GIẢI PHÓNG DÂN TỘC**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

*-* Xuất phát từ yêu cầu thực tiễn cách mạng Việt Nam, trên cơ sở vận dụng sáng tạo chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin, Hồ Chí Minh đi sâu giải quyết vấn đề dân tộc thuộc địa, cốt lõi là đấu tranh chống chủ nghĩa thực dân, giành độc lập dân tộc. Người luôn khẳng định: Độc lập, tự do là quyền thiêng liêng, bất khả xâm phạm của các dân tộc, là động lực to lớn của đất nước. Trong tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, vấn đề dân tộc và vấn đề giai cấp, độc lập dân tộc và chủ nghĩa xã hội luôn gắn bó chặt chẽ, thống nhất.

- Hồ Chí Minh đã nêu lên một loạt luận điểm về con đường, chiến lược, sách lược, phương pháp tiến hành cách mạng: Cách mạng phải đi theo con đường cách mạng vô sản, đặt dưới sự lãnh đạo của Đảng cộng sản, tiến hành bằng bạo lực của quần chúng nhân dân v.v..

2.1. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về vấn đề dân tộc

2.1.1. Vấn đề dân tộc thuộc địa

2.1.2. Mối quan hệ giữa vấn đề dân tộc và vấn đề giai cấp

2.2. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc

2.2.1. Mục tiêu của cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc

2.2.2. Cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc muốn thắng lợi phải đi theo con đường của cách mạng vô sản

2.2.3. Cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc trong thời đại mới phải do Đảng cộng sản lãnh đạo

2.2.4. Lực lượng của cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc bao gồm toàn dân tộc

2.2.5. Cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc cần được tiến hành chủ động, sáng tạo và có khả năng giành thắng lợi trước cách mạng vô sản ở chính quốc

2.2.6. Cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc phải được tiến hành bằng con đường bạo lực

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Nguyễn Bá Linh (2009), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về độc lập dân tộc và chủ nghĩa xã hội*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.

2. Ủy ban khoa học xã hội Việt Nam (1990), *Hồ Chí Minh, anh hùng giải phóng dân tộc, danh nhân văn hóa*, Nxb Khoa học xã hội, Hà Nội.

**CHƯƠNG III – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI VÀ CON ĐƯỜNG QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI**

**Ở VIỆT NAM**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

*-*Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về chủ nghĩa xã hội bao quát những vấn đề cơ bản về bản chất, đặc trưng, mục tiêu, động lực của chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam.

- Hồ Chí Minh khẳng định để đi lên chủ nghĩa xã hội nhất thiết phải trải qua thời kỳ quá độ khó khăn, lâu dài; đồng thời, Người cũng đã đưa ra một loạt các phương châm, biện pháp, nhiệm vụ tiến hành xây dựng chủ nghĩa xã hội trong thời kỳ quá độ ở nước ta.

- Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về chủ nghĩa xã hội và con đường quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam là cơ sở lý luận và kim chỉ nam cho việc kiên trì, giữ vững định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa của Đảng ta trong quá trình đổi mới hiện nay.

3.1. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.1.1. Tính tất yếu của chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.1.2. Đặc trưng của chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.1.3. Mục tiêu, động lực của chủ nghĩa xã hội

3.2. Con đường, biện pháp quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.2.1. Con đường quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam

3.2.2. Biện pháp

Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:

1. Lại Quốc Khánh (2009), *Biện chứng của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam.* Nxb Lý luận chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
2. Trần Nhâm (2012), *Hồ Chí Minh nhà tư tưởng thiên tài*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.
3. Hoàng Trang (2000), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh vè độc lập dân tộc gắn liền với chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam,* Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.

**CHƯƠNG IV – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ ĐẢNG CỘNG SẢN**

**VIỆT NAM**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

*-* Hồ Chí Minh là người sáng lập, đồng thời là người giáo dục và rèn luyện Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam, Người đã xây dựng nên một hệ thống các quan điểm về Đảng cộng sản và xây dựng Đảng cộng sản. Đó là các vấn đề có tính quy luật về sự ra đời, vị trí, vai trò, bản chất của Đảng cộng sản và những vấn đề có tính nguyên tắc về xây dựng Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam trong sạch vững mạnh, nhất là trong điều kiện Đảng trở thành Đảng cầm quyền.

- Hiện nay, vai trò lãnh đạo của Đảng càng cần phải được tăng cường, năng lực lãnh đạo và sức chiến đấu của Đảng cần được nâng cao hơn nữa để đáp ứng yêu cầu, nhiệm vụ cách mạng trong thời kỳ mới.

4.1. Quan niệm của Hồ Chí Minh về vai trò và bản chất của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam

4.1.1. Sự ra đời của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam

4.1.2. Vai trò của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam

4.1.3. Bản chất của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam

4.1.4. Quan niệm về Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam cầm quyền

4.2. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam trong sạch, vững mạnh

4.2.1. Xây dựng Đảng – quy luật tồn tại và phát triển của Đảng

4.2.2. Nội dung công tác xây dựng Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Nguyễn Quốc Bảo (2001), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng Đảng*, Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.
2. Võ Nguyên Giáp (Chủ biên) (1997), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và con đường cách mạng Việt Nam*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, tr.131-188.

**CHƯƠNG V – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ ĐẠI ĐOÀN KẾT DÂN TỘC VÀ ĐOÀN KẾT QUỐC TẾ**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

*-* Đại đoàn kết dân tộc là cội nguồn sức mạnh làm nên mọi thắng lợi của cách mạng Việt Nam. Hồ Chí Minh luôn khẳng định, đây là vấn đề có ý nghĩa chiến lược, nhất quán, lâu dài và là mục tiêu, nhiệm vụ hàng đầu của Đảng, của dân tộc. Do tầm quan trọng như vậy, nên Hồ Chí Minh đã đưa ra một loạt biện pháp xây dựng khối đại đoàn kết dân tộc, trong đó, đặc biệt nhấn mạnh tới vai trò và những nguyên tắc hoạt động cơ bản của Mặt trận dân tộc thống nhất.

- Hồ Chí Minh cũng sớm xác định vai trò và tích cực phát huy sức mạnh của đoàn kết quốc tế, tạo sức mạnh tổng hợp đưa sự nghiệp cách mạng đi tới thắng lợi.

- Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đại đoàn kết dân tộc và đoàn kết quốc tế là một đóng góp quan trọng vào kho tàng kinh nghiệm cách mạng thế giới, làm phong phú lý luận chủ nghĩa Mác - Lênin về công tác vận động và tổ chức quần chúng trong sự nghiệp cách mạng.

5.1. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đại đoàn kết dân tộc

5.1.1. Vai trò của đại đoàn kết dân tộc trong sự nghiệp cách mạng

5.1.2. Nội dung của đại đoàn kết dân tộc

5.1.3. Hình thức tổ chức khối đại đoàn kết dân tộc

5.2. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đoàn kết quốc tế

5.2.1. Vai trò của đoàn kết quốc tế

5.2.2. Lực lượng đoàn kết và hình thức đoàn kết

5.2.3. Nguyên tắc đoàn kết quốc tế

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Học viện chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh – Viện Hồ Chí Minh và các lãnh tụ của Đảng (2004), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đại đoàn kết với vấn đề phát huy sức mạnh đại đoàn kết dân tộc trong thời kỳ mới,* Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
2. Nguyễn Dy Niên (2002), *Tư tưởng ngoại giao Hồ Chí Minh*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, tr.112.
3. Lê Văn Yên (2008), *Hồ Chí Minh với chiến lược đoàn kết quốc tế trong cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.

**CHƯƠNG VI – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ XÂY DỰNG NHÀ NƯỚC CỦA DÂN, DO DÂN, VÌ DÂN**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

*-* Xây dựng Nhà nước Việt Nam nhằm đảm bảo quyền “là chủ” và “làm chủ” của nhân dân được Hồ Chí Minh đặc biệt quan tâm. Người đã đưa ra một loạt các luận điểm về một Nhà nước Việt Nam mới: đó là Nhà nước của dân, do dân, vì dân; Nhà nước thống nhất giữa bản chất giai cấp công nhân với tính nhân dân và tính dân tộc; Nhà nước pháp quyền có hiệu lực pháp lý mạnh mẽ.

-Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về Nhà nước của dân, do dân, vì dân có giá trị lý luận và thực tiễn to lớn, sâu sắc, định hướng cho việc xây dựng và hoàn thiện nền dân chủ, Nhà nước kiểu mới ở Việt Nam hiện nay.

6.1. Xây dựng Nhà nước thể hiện quyền làm chủ của nhân dân

6.1.1. Nhà nước của dân

6.1.2. Nhà nước do dân

6.1.3. Nhà nước vì dân

6.2. Quan điểm của Hồ Chí Minh về sự thống nhất giữa bản chất giai cấp công nhân với tính nhân dân và tính dân tộc của Nhà nước

6.2.1. Về bản chất giai cấp công nhân của Nhà nước

6.2.2. Bản chất giai cấp công nhân thống nhất với tính nhân dân, tính dân tộc của Nhà nước

6.3. Xây dựng Nhà nước có hiệu lực pháp lý mạnh mẽ

6.3.1. Xây dựng một Nhà nước hợp pháp, hợp hiến

6.3.2. Hoạt động quản lý nhà nước bằng Hiến pháp, pháp luật và chú trọng đưa pháp luật vào cuộc sống

6.4. Xây dựng Nhà nước trong sạch, hoạt động có hiệu quả

6.4.1. Xây dựng đội ngũ cán bộ, công chức đủ đức và tài

6.4.2. Đề phòng và khắc phục những tiêu cực trong hoạt động của Nhà nước

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Phạm Ngọc Anh – Bùi Đình Phong (2003), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng Nhà nước pháp quyền kiểu mới ở Việt Nam*, Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.
2. Nguyễn Đình Lộc (1998) *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về Nhà nước của dân, do dân, vì dân,* Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
3. Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam (2011), *Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XI*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, tr.52-55, 84-85.

**CHƯƠNG VII – TƯ TƯỞNG HỒ CHÍ MINH VỀ VĂN HÓA, ĐẠO ĐỨC, VÀ XÂY DỰNG CON NGƯỜI MỚI**

*Giới thiệu khái quát về chương:*

- Hồ Chí Minh đã sớm nhận thấy vai trò, sức mạnh của văn hóa và đưa văn hóa vào chiến lược phát triển đất nước. Văn hóa được Hồ Chí Minh coi như một sức mạnh vật chất, một động lực, có chức năng quan trọng: bồi dưỡng tư tưởng đúng đắn, tình cảm cao đẹp, mở rộng hiểu biết, xây dựng và hoàn thiện bản thân con người. Nền văn hóa mới phải mang tính dân tộc, khoa học và đại chúng.

- Xây dựng nền văn hóa mới gắn liền với việc xây dựng nền đạo đức mới. Hồ Chí Minh đã phát triển, hoàn thiện tư tưởng đạo đức học mác xít về vai trò và sức mạnh của đạo đức, về chuẩn mực đạo đức cơ bản, về những nguyên tắc xây dựng một nền đạo đức mới phù hợp với Việt Nam.

- Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng con người mới có nội dung sâu sắc và mới mẻ. Coi con người là vốn quý nhất, vừa là mục tiêu vừa là động lực của sự nghiệp cách mạng, vì vậy, việc xây dựng con người mới xã hội chủ nghĩa là chiến lược hàng đầu của cách mạng nhằm tạo ra những thế hệ con người Việt Nam mới phát triển toàn diện.

7.1. Những quan điểm cơ bản của Hồ Chí Minh về văn hóa

7.1.1. Định nghĩa về văn hóa và quan điểm về xây dựng nền văn hóa mới

7.1.2. Quan điểm của Hồ Chí Minh về các vấn đề chung của văn hóa

7.1.3. Quan điểm của Hồ Chí Minh về một số lĩnh vực chính của văn hóa

7.2. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đạo đức

7.2.1. Nội dung cơ bản của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đạo đức

7.2.2. Sinh viên học tập và làm theo tấm gương đạo đức Hồ Chí Minh

7.3. Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng con người mới

7.3.1. Quan niệm của Hồ Chí Minh về con người

7.3.2. Quan điểm của Hồ Chí Minh về vai trò của con người và chiến lược “trồng người”.

*Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:*

1. Thành Duy (2002), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh với sự nghiệp xây dựng con người phát triển toàn diện*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội, tr.14-128.
2. Trương trình nghiên cứu tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh (1993), *Tư tưởng Đạo đức Hồ Chí Minh truyền thống dân tộc và nhân loại*, Nxb Khoa học xã hội, Hà Nội.

**7. GIÁO TRÌNH**

Bộ Giáo dục và đào tạo (2015), *Giáo trình Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh* (Dành cho sinh viên đại học, cao đẳng khối không chuyên ngành Mác - Lênin, tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh), Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.

**8. TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO**

1. Phạm Ngọc Anh – Bùi Đình Phong (2003), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng Nhà nước pháp quyền kiểu mới ở Việt Nam*, Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.
2. Nguyễn Quốc Bảo (2001), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về xây dựng Đảng*, Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.
3. Trường Chinh (1980), *Chủ tịch Hồ Chí Minh – Sự nghiệp vĩ đại, gương sáng đời đời*, Nxb. Sự thật, Hà Nội.
4. Lê Duẩn (1970), *Dưới là cờ vẻ vang của Đảng, vì độc lập, tự do, vì chủ nghĩa xã hội, tiến lên giành những thắng lợi mới*, Nxb. Sự thật, Hà Nội.
5. Thành Duy (2002), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh với sự nghiệp xây dựng con người phát triển toàn diện*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
6. Võ Nguyên Giáp (chủ biên) (1997), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh và con đường cách mạng Việt Nam,* Nxb. Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
7. Hồ Chí Minh (2011), *Toàn tập*, tập 1 – 15, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
8. Học viện chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh – Viện Hồ Chí Minh và các lãnh tụ của Đảng (2004), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về đại đoàn kết với vấn đề phát huy sức mạnh đại đoàn kết dân tộc trong thời kỳ mới,* Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
9. Lại Quốc Khánh (2009), *Biện chứng của tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam.* Nxb Lý luận chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
10. Nguyễn Đình Lộc (1998) *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về Nhà nước của dân, do dân, vì dân,* Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
11. Nguyễn Bá Linh (2009), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh về độc lập dân tộc và chủ nghĩa xã hội*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.
12. Nguyễn Dy Niên (2002), *Tư tưởng ngoại giao Hồ Chí Minh*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.
13. Trần Nhâm (2012), *Hồ Chí Minh nhà tư tưởng thiên tài*, Nxb Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội.
14. Hoàng Trang (2000), *Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh vè độc lập dân tộc gắn liền với chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam,* Nxb Lao động, Hà Nội.
15. Ủy ban khoa học xã hội Việt Nam (1990), *Hồ Chí Minh, anh hùng giải phóng dân tộc, danh nhân văn hóa*, Nxb Khoa học xã hội, Hà Nội.
16. Lê Văn Yên (2008), *Hồ Chí Minh với chiến lược đoàn kết quốc tế trong cách mạng giải phóng dân tộc*, Nxb Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội.

**9. PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐÁNH GIÁ HỌC PHẦN**

* Theo quy chế đào tạo Đại học, Cao đẳng hiện hành của Bộ Giáo dục – đào tạo
* Theo quy chế của trường Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân:
* Bài tập cá nhân:
* Số lần: 1.
* Hình thức: tự luận.
* Trọng số: 30%.
* Điều kiện dự thi kết thúc học phần: 80% thời gian môn học sinh viên phải có mặt trên lớp nghe giảng, thảo luận.
* Hình thức thi kết thúc học phần: trắc nghiệm.
* Công thức tính điểm học phần:
* Điểm tư cách trọng số 10%.
* Điểm bài tập trọng số 30%.
* Điểm thi kết thúc học phần trọng số 60%.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | *Hà Nội, ngày tháng năm 2019* |
| **TRƯỞNG BỘ MÔN**  **(đã ký)**  **TS. Nguyễn Hồng Sơn** |  | **HIỆU TRƯỞNG**  **(đã ký)**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| BỘ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  **TRƯỜNG ĐH KINH TẾ QUỐC DÂN**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** | **CỘNG HÒA XÃ HỘI CHỦ NGHĨA VIỆT NAM**  **Độc lập – Tự do – Hạnh phúc**  **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** |

**ĐỀ CƯƠNG CHI TIẾT HỌC PHẦN**

TRÌNH ĐỘ ĐÀO TẠO: **ĐẠI HỌC** LOẠI HÌNH ĐÀO TẠO: **CHÍNH QUY**

**1. TÊN HỌC PHẦN:**

Tiếng Việt: **Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam**

Tiếng Anh**: Viet Nam Communist Party History**

Mã học phần: LLLSD1101 Số tín chỉ: 2

**2. BỘ MÔN PHỤ TRÁCH GIẢNG DẠY**: **Đường lối cách mạng của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam.**

**3. ĐIỀU KIỆN HỌC TRƯỚC**: Triết học, Kinh tế Chính trị, CNXHKH

**4. MÔ TẢ HỌC PHẦN**

**Môn học Lịch sử Đảng Cộng Sản Việt Nam** là 1 trong 5 môn học thuộc khoa học Mác-Lê nin, Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh được giảng dạy trong hệ thống giáo dục đại học ở Việt Nam. Đây là học phần bắt buộc sinh viên phải tích luỹ kiến thức.

Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam là một chuyên ngành, một bộ phận của khoa học lịch sử. Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, như Chủ tịch Hồ Chí Minh khẳng định, là *cả một pho lịch sử bằng vàng*. Đó chính là tính khoa học, cách mạng, giá trị thực tiễn sâu sắc trong Cương lĩnh, đường lối của Đảng; là sự lãnh đạo đúng đắn, đáp ứng kịp thời những yêu cầu, nhiệm vụ do lịch sử đặt ra; những kinh nghiệm, bài học có tính quy luật, lý luận của cách mạng Việt Nam và những truyền thống vẻ vang của Đảng.

Nghiên cứu, học tập lịch sử Đảng không chỉ nắm vững những sự kiện, cột mốc lịch sử mà cần thấu hiểu những vấn đề phong phú đó trong quá trình lãnh đạo và đấu tranh, để vận dụng, phát triển trong thời kỳ đổi mới toàn diện, đẩy mạnh công nghiệp hóa, hiện đại hóa đất nước và hội nhập quốc tế hiện nay.

**5. MỤC TIÊU HỌC PHẦN**

**Mục tiêu tổng quát:**

Mục tiêu của nghiên cứu, học tập môn học lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam là nâng cao nhận thức, hiểu biết về Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam - đội tiền phong lãnh đạo cách mạng Việt Nam đưa đến những thắng lợi, thành tựu có ý nghĩa lịch sử to lớn trong sự phát triển của lịch sử dân tộc. Qua học tập, nghiên cứu lịch sử Đảng để giáo dục lý tưởng, truyền thống đấu tranh cách mạng của Đảng và dân tộc, củng cố, bồi đắp niềm tin đối với sự lãnh đạo của Đảng, tự hào về Đảng và thế hệ trẻ gia nhập Đảng, tham gia xây dựng Đảng ngày càng vững mạnh, tiếp tục thực hiện sứ mệnh của Đảng lãnh đạo bảo vệ vững chắc Tổ quốc và xây dựng thành công chủ nghĩa xã hội ở Việt Nam.

**Mục tiêu chi tiết:** Môn học giúp người học

* Nhận thức đầy đủ, có hệ thống về sự lãnh đạo, đấu tranh và cầm quyền của Đảng
* Nhận thức rõ về Đảng với tư cách một Đảng chính trị-tổ chức lãnh đạo giai cấp công nhân, nhân dân lao động và dân tộc Việt Nam.
* Từ kiến thức Lịch sử Đảng, nâng cao nhận thức chính trị về những vấn đề lớn của đất nước, dân tộc trong mối quan hệ với những vấn đề của thời đại và thế giới, góp phần giáo dục truyền thống, đạo đức cách mạng, nhân cách, lối sống cho thế hệ trẻ để phê phán, ngăn chặn, đẩy lùi sự suy thoái về tư tưởng chính trị, đạo đức, lối sống và những biểu hiện “tự diễn biến”, “tự chuyển hóa” trong nội bộ.

**6. NỘI DUNG HỌC PHẦN**

**PHÂN BỔ THỜI GIAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***STT*** | ***Nội dung*** | ***Tổng số tiết*** | ***Trong đó*** | | ***Ghi chú*** |
| **Lý thuyết** | **Bài tập, thảo luận** |
| 1 | Chương Mở đầu | 2 | 2 | 0 | Máy chiếu |
| 2 | Chương 1 | 7 | 4 | 3 | Mạng internet |
| 3 | Chương 2 | 7 | 4 | 3 | giúp sinh viên |
| 4 | Chương 3 | 9 | 5 | 4 | học tập hiệu quả |
| **5** | **Cộng** | **25** | **15** | **10** | **Tiết 60 phút** |

Học phần được kết cấu gồm 4 chương, cụ thể như sau:

**CHƯƠNG 1**

**ĐỐI TƯỢNG, CHỨC NĂNG, NHIỆM VỤ, NỘI DUNG VÀ PHƯƠNG PHÁP NGHIÊN CỨU, HỌC TẬP LỊCH SỬ ĐẢNG CỘNG SẢN VIỆT NAM**

- Đối tượng nghiên cứu của khoa học Lịch sử Đảng là sự ra đời, phát triển và hoạt động lãnh đạo của Đảng qua các thời kỳ lịch sử, các Cương lĩnh, đường lối, chủ trương, chính sách lớn, quá trình chỉ đạo, tổ chức thực hiện trong tiến trình cách mạng Việt Nam.

- Cơ sở phương pháp luận: Thế giới quan, phương pháp luận của chủ nghĩa Mác – Lênin, tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh.

- Các phương pháp nghiên cứu chủ yếu: Phương pháp lịch sử và phương pháp lôgic, phương pháp phân tích, tổng hợp, thống kê, so sánh…

- Việc nắm vững đối tượng và phương pháp nghiên cứu là hết sức quan trọng bởi nó là cơ sở, là tiền đề để đi vào nghiên cứu các nội dung của môn học.

Nội dung chủ yếu của chương Mở đầu bao gồm:

1.1. ĐỐI TƯỢNG NGHIÊN CỨU CỦA MÔN HỌC

1.2. CHỨC NĂNG NHIỆM VỤ CỦA MÔN HỌC

1.2.1. Chức năng của khoa học Lịch sử Đảng

1.2.2. Nhiệm vụ của môn học

1.3. PHƯƠNG PHÁP NGHIÊN CỨU, HỌC TẬP MÔN HỌC

1.3.1 Phương pháp luận

1.3.2. Các phương pháp cụ thể

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Hội đồng Trung ương chỉ đạo biên soạn giáo trình quốc gia các môn khoa học Mác- Lênin, Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, (2018), *Giáo trình Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam* (tái bản có sửa chữa, bổ sung), Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia-Sự thật, Hà Nội
2. Học viện Chính trị quốc gia Hồ Chí Minh. Viện Lịch sử Đảng, (2018), *Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam,* Tập 1, Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
3. Nguyễn Thị Hoàn, (2006), *Xây dựng hệ thống kho tư liệu phim ảnh phục vụ giảng dạy, học tập theo tổng hợp kiến thức môn học Lịch sử Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam,* Đề tài cấp Bộ, nhánh số 14

**CHƯƠNG 2**

**ĐẢNG CỘNG SẢN VIỆT NAM RA ĐỜI VÀ LÃNH ĐẠO ĐẤU TRANH GIÀNH CHÍNH QUYỀN (1930-1945)**

Chương này cung cấp cho sinh viên những tri thức có tính hệ thống về quá trình ra đời của Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (1920-1930), nội dung cơ bản, giá trị lịch sử của Cương lĩnh chính trị đầu tiên của Đảng và quá trình Đảng lãnh đạo cuộc đấu tranh giành độc lập, giành chính quyền (1930-1945). Từ việc nhận thức lịch sử thời kỳ đầu dựng Đảng, góp phần trang bị cho sinh viên phương pháp nhận thức biện chứng, khách quan về quá trình Đảng ra đời và vai trò lãnh đạo của Đảng trong cuộc đấu tranh giành độc lập dân tộc, xác lập chính quyền cách mạng cũng như góp phần củng cố niềm tin của thế hệ trẻ vào sự nghiệp giải phóng dân tộc và phát triển đất nước theo con đường cách mạng vô sản, sự lựa chọn đúng đắn, tất yếu, khách quan của lãnh tụ Nguyễn Ái Quốc và Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam từ thời kỳ đầu dựng Đảng.

2.1.ĐẢNG CỘNG SẢN VIỆT NAM RA ĐỜI VÀ CƯƠNG LĨNH CHÍNH TRỊ ĐẦU TIÊN CỦA ĐẢNG

2.1.1. Bối cảnh lịch sử

2.1.2. Nguyễn Ái Quốc chuẩn bị các điều kiện để thành lập Đảng

2.1.3. Thành lập Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam và Cương lĩnh chính trị đầu tiên của Đảng

2.1.4. Ý nghĩa lịch sử của việc thành lập Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam

2.2. LÃNH ĐẠO ĐẤU TRANH GIÀNH CHÍNH QUYỀN 1930-1945

2.2.1. Phong trào cách mạng 1930-1931 và khôi phục phong trào 1932-1935

2.2.2. Phong trào dân chủ 1936-1939

2.2.3. Phong trào giải phóng dân tộc 1939-1945

2.2.4. Tính chất, ý nghĩa và kinh nghiệm của Cách mạng tháng Tám năm 1945

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Viện nghiên cứu Chủ nghĩa Mác- Lênin, Tư tưởng Hồ Chí Minh, Viện Lịch sử Đảng, (1995), *Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, Tập II,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
2. Trần Văn Giàu (1975), *Sự phát triển tư tưởng ở Việt Nam từ thế kỷ XIX đến Cách mạng Tháng Tám-Hệ ý thức tư sản và sự thất bại của nó trước nhiệm vụ lịch sử*, Nhà xuất bản Khoa học xã hội
3. Trần Thị Thu Hoài, (2016), *Sự biến đổi của chính trị ở Việt Nam từ 1858 đến 1945,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội

**CHƯƠNG 3**

**ĐẢNG LÃNH ĐẠO HAI CUỘC KHÁNG CHIẾN, HOÀN THÀNH GIẢI PHÓNG DÂN TỘC, THỐNG NHẤT ĐẤT NƯỚC (1945-1975)**

Chương này cung cấp cho sinh viên những nội dung cơ bản, hệ thống về sự lãnh đạo của Đảng đối với hai cuộc kháng chiến chống thực dân Pháp và đế quốc Mỹ xâm lược, hoàn thành giải phóng dân tộc, thống nhất đất nước thời kỳ 1945-1975. Từ đó giúp sinh viên có nhận thức đúng đắn thực tiễn lịch sử và những kinh nghiệm rút ra từ quá trình Đảng lãnh đạo hai cuộc kháng chiến, nâng cao niềm tin vào sự lãnh đạo của Đảng và sức mạnh đoàn kết của toàn dân trong sự nghiệp cách mạng của dân tộc. Trên cơ sở đó trang bị kỹ năng tìm chọn tài liệu nghiên cứu, năng lực phân tích sự kiện, phương pháp đúc rút kinh nghiệm lịch sử về sự lãnh đạo kháng chiến của Đảng và ý thức phê phán những nhận thức sai trái về lịch sử của Đảng.

3.1. LÃNH ĐẠO XÂY DỰNG, BẢO VỆ CHÍNH QUYỀN QUYỀN CÁCH MẠNG, KHÁNG CHIẾN CHỐNG THỰC DÂN PHÁP XÂM LƯỢC 1945-1954

3.1.1. Xây dựng, bảo vệ chính quyền cách mạng 1945 -1946

3.1.2. Đường lối kháng chiến toàn quốc và quá trình thực hiện từ năm 1946 đến năm 1950

3.1.3. Đẩy mạnh cuộc kháng chiến đến thắng lợi 1951-1954

3.1.4. Ý nghĩa lịch sử và kinh nghiệm của Đảng trong lãnh đạo kháng chiến chống Pháp và can thiệp Mỹ

3.2. LÃNH ĐẠO XÂY DỰNG CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI Ở MIỀN BẮC VÀ KHÁNG CHIẾN CHỐNG ĐẾ QUỐC MỸ XÂM LƯỢC, GIẢI PHÓNG MIỀN NAM THỐNG NHẤT ĐẤT NƯỚC (1954 - 1975)

3.2.1. Sự lãnh đạo của Đảng đối với cách mạng hai miền Nam - Bắc 1954 -1965

* + 1. Lãnh đạo cách mạng cả nước 1965-1975
    2. Ý nghĩa lịch sử và kinh nghiệm lãnh đạo của Đảng thời kỳ 1954 -1975

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Ban Chỉ đạo tổng kết chiến tranh trực thuộc Bộ Chính trị, (2008), *Chiến tranh cách mạng Việt Nam 1945- 1975, thắng lợi và bài học.* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
2. Bộ Ngoại giao, (2004), *Mặt trận Ngoại giao với cuộc đàm phán Paris về Việt Nam,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
3. Lê Duẩn, (1975), *Dưới lá cờ vẻ vang của Đảng vì độc lập tự do, vì chủ nghĩa xã hội tiến lên giành những thắng lợi mới*, Nhà xuất bản Sự thật, Hà Nội

**CHƯƠNG 4**

**ĐẢNG LÃNH ĐẠO CẢ NƯỚC QUÁ ĐỘ LÊN CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI VÀ TIẾN HÀNH CÔNG CUỘC ĐỔI MỚI (1975-2018)**

Chương này giúp sinh viên nắm được đường lối, cương lĩnh, những tri thức về quá trình phát triển đường lối và sự lãnh đạo của Đảng đưa cả nước quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội, tiến hành công cuộc đổi mới từ sau ngày thống nhất đất nước năm đến nay (1975- 2018). Trên cơ sở đó củng cố niềm tin của sinh viên về những thắng lợi của Đảng trong lãnh đạo đưa cả nước quá độ lên chủ nghĩa xã hội và tiến hành công cuộc đổi mới (1975-2018), củng cố niềm tin và lòng tự hào vào sự lãnh đạo của Đảng đối với sự nghiệp cách mạng hiện nay. Đồng thời rèn luyện phong cách tư duy lý luận gắn liền với thực tiễn, phát huy tính năng động, sáng tạo của sinh viên; vận dụng những tri thức về sự lãnh đạo của Đảng vào thực tiễn cuộc sống.

4.1. LÃNH ĐẠO CẢ NƯỚC XÂY DỰNG CHỦ NGHĨA XÃ HỘI VÀ BẢO VỆ TỔ QUỐC 1975-1986

4.1.1. Xây dựng chủ nghĩa xã hội và bảo vệ Tổ quốc 1975-1981

4.1.2. Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ V của Đảng và các bước đột phá tiếp tục đổi mới kinh tế 1982- 1986

4.2.LÃNH ĐẠO CÔNG CUỘC ĐỔI MỚI, ĐẨY MẠNH CÔNG NGHIỆP HÓA, HIỆN ĐẠI HÓA VÀ HỘI NHẬP QUỐC TẾ 1986-2018

4.2.1. Đổi mới toàn diện, đưa đất nước ra khỏi khủng hoảng kinh tế -xã hội 1986 -1996

4.2.2. Tiếp tục công cuộc đổi mới, đẩy mạnh công nghiệp hóa, hiện đại hóa và hội nhập quốc tế 1996-2018

4.2.3. Thành tựu, kinh nghiệm của công cuộc đổi mới

**Tài liệu tham khảo**

1. Phạm Minh Chính, Vương Quân Hoàng, (2009), *Kinh tế Việt Nam - Thăng trầm và đột phá*, Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia - Hà Nội
2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, (2015), *Báo cáo tổng kết một số vấn đề lý luận-thực tiễn qua 30 năm đổi mới,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
3. Nguyễn Thị Hoàn, (2017), *Chính sách đối ngoại của Đảng cộng sản Việt Nam với khu vực Đông Nam Á 1995-2006,* Nhà xuất bản Lao động

**7. GIÁO TRÌNH**

Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo, (2019), *Giáo trình* *Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam*, (Sử dụng trong các trường Đại học- Hệ không chuyên lý luận chính trị), Tài liệu tập huấn giảng dạy

**8. TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO**

1. Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo (2010), *Giáo trình* *Lịch sử Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam*, Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
2. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, (1995-2018), *Văn kiện Đảng toàn tập*, tập 1 đến tập 65, Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia, Hà Nội
3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam, (2011), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XI,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội
4. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam (2016), *Văn kiện Đại hội đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ XII,* Nhà xuất bản Chính trị Quốc gia. Hà Nội
5. *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập*, (2011), tập 1 đến tập 15. Nhà xuất bản Chính trị quốc gia, Hà Nội

**9. PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐÁNH GIÁ HỌC PHẦN:**

- Ý thức học tập (chuyên cần và thảo luận trên lớp): 10%

- Bài tập lớn: 30%

- Thi kết thúc học phần (tự luận và trắc nghiệm): 60%

- Thang điểm: 10/10

**Điều kiện dự thi học phần:**

- Tham gia học tập trên lớp từ 80% số giờ trở lên

- Điểm chuyên cần>= 5

**10. GIẢNG VIÊN GIẢNG DẠY**

Giảng viên phụ trách: TS. Nguyễn Thị Hoàn

Giảng viên giảng dạy:

1. TS. Nguyễn Hữu Công
2. PGS. TS Trần Thị Thu Hoài
3. TS. Nguyễn Thị Hoàn
4. Ths. Phí Thị Lan Phương
5. Ths.NCS. Nguyễn Thị Thắm
6. Ths. NCS. Lê Thị Hồng Thuận

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | *Hà Nội, ngày 30 tháng 9 năm 2019* |
| **TRƯỞNG BỘ MÔN**  **(đã ký)**  **TS. Nguyễn Thị Hoàn** |  | **HIỆU TRƯỞNG**  **(đã ký)**  **PGS.TS Phạm Hồng Chương** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING**  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY** | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence-Freedom-Happiness** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME: Algebra**

Code: TOCB1101 Number of Credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION**

**Department of fundamental mathematics**

**Office:** 4th floor, Building 7, National Economics University, 207 Giai Phong road, Hanoi, Vietnam

**Office Hours:** 8am-5pm, from Monday to Friday

**Office Telephone:** 084 4 36283007, ext: 5944 or 5798

**3. Prerequisite:** High school algebra.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**

This course is intended for freshman who wish to obtain knowledge of mathematical techniques suitable for economic analysis. It assumes very little prerequisite knowledge.

The module includes some minimum knowledge of algebra, required for students in bachelor's of economics, Business Administration, Finance and Banking, and especial for people who often work, research economic models such as the students of faculty of Mathematical Economics, students of economic Informatics, students of School of information technology. Through this module, students are equipped with the basic knowledge about the set, mapping, polynomial, vector space, quadratic form and effective computational tools for the system of linear equations, matrices, determinant, contributing practice scientific thinking and build a foundation of applied mathematics. The knowledge of the modules needed for students to learn the basics, and fields such as financial theory module, the statistical probability theory, optimization theory, Discrete Mathematics, Calculus 1, Calculus 2 and game theory, .... this course helps freshman apply Mathematics in economics, economic Informatics and economic information technology at the first semester.

**5. LEARNING OUTCOMES**

On successful completion of this course students will be able to:

\* To gain confidence with mathematics

\* To develop analytical skills

\* To develop organizational skills

\* To develop both independent learning and group work skills

\* To develop verbal and non-verbal communication skills

\* To successfully use mathematics in economics and business applications

\* To successfully use mathematics in information technology

**6. COURSE OBJECTIVES**

Course Content:

* Set theory
* Mapping
* Polynomials
* Binary relations
* Vectors and vector spaces
* Economic applications
* Matrix algebra
* Special kinds of matrices
* Inverse matrix
* Rank of matrix and application to portfolio theory
* Systems of linear equations
* Cramer System
* Linear models – applications in economics and business
* Linear mapping
* Quadratic forms

**7. COURSE CONTENT AND LECTURE PLAN**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1. Set, Mapping and polynomials | 6 | 4 | 2 |
| 2 | Chapter 2. Vector Spaces | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3. Matrix and Determinant | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4. Systems of linear equations | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 5 | Chapter 5. Linear Mapping | 6 | 3 | 3 |
| 6 | Chapter 6. Quadratic forms | 6 | 3 | 3 |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **28** | **17** |

**Weeks 1-2: CHAPTER 1. SET, MAPPING AND POLYNOMIAL**

1.1 Some basic concepts about set

1.2 Binary relation

1.3 Complex numbers

1.4 Polynomials

**Weeks 3 - 5: CHAPTER 2.**  **VECTOR SPACES**

2.1 System of linear equations - Gaussian and Gauss Jordan Elimination

2.2 Vectors and vector spaces

2.3 Linear dependence and linear independence

2.4 Bases and representations

2.5 Rank of a vectors set

**Reading and Homework: Chapter 2 [1], Chapters 2 [3], Chapter 10 [4]**

**Weeks 6 - 8: CHAPTER 3. MATRIX AND DETERMINANT**

3.1 The concept of matrix and the matrix transformations

3.2 Algebra matrix

3.3 Determinant

3.4 Inverse matrix

3.5 Rank of matrix

**Midterm Exam**

**Reading and Homework: Chapter 3[1], Chapters 8, 9 [4], Chapter 8, 9 [5]**

**Weeks 9 - 11: CHAPTER 4.** **SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS**

4.1 Cramer systems

4.2 General systems of linear equations

4.3. Homogeneous linear equations

4.4 Some linear models in economics

Mid-term Test

**Reading and Homework: Chapter 4 [1], Chapters 2[3], Chapter 7[4]**

**Weeks 12 – 13: CHAPTER 5. LINEAR MAPPING**

5.1 The concepts of linear mapping

5.2 Matrix of linear mapping

**Weeks 14 – 15: CHAPTER 6. QUADRATIC FORMS**

6.1 The Basic Concepts of the Quadratic Forms

6.2. Transforms a Quadratic Form to Fomal Quadratic Forms

6.3. Defined quadratic form

Revised

**Final Examination**

**8. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

[1] Required: Addvanced Mathematics for Economist, LE DINH THUY, NGUYEN THI QUYNH LAN (2012), National Economics University Publisher

**9. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

[2] NGUYEN ĐINH TRI, TA VAN DINH, NGUYEN HO QUYNH (2008), Addvanced Mathematics, Vietnam Education Publisher, Volumn 1.

[3] CHIANG, A.C, (1985), Methods of mathematical Economics, Third edition, Mc. Graw-Hill, Inc.

[4] MICHAEL HOY, JOHN LIVERNOIS, CHRIS MCKENNA, RAY REES, THANASIS STENGOS (2001), Mathematics for Economics, Second edition, The MIT Press Cambrige, Massachusetts, London, England.

[5] CARLP. SIMON, LAWRENCE BLUME, (1994), Mathematics for Economists, Norton & Company, Inc.

[6] DOAN QUYNH (Editor) (1998), Linear Algebra and Analytic geometry, Hanoi National University publisher.

[7] HANS SCHNEIDER, GEORGE PHILLIP BARKER (1989), Matrices and linear algeblra, second edition, Dover publications, INC., New York,.

**10. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

Your course score will be determined as the following weighted average:

| **Item** | **Weight** |
| --- | --- |
| Attendance | 10% |
| Midterm | 20% |
| Final Exam | 70% |
| **Total** | 100% |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Grading Criteria: %** | | **Letter Grade** | |
| 96%-100% | A+ | | 4,0 |
| 91%-95% | A | | 4,0 |
| 85%-90% | A- | | 3,7 |
| 81% - 84% | B+ | | 3,3 |
| 7,6%-80% | B | | 3,0 |
| 71%-75% | B- | | 2,7 |
| 66%-70% | C+ | | 2,3 |
| 61%-65% | C | | 2,0 |
| 55%-60% | C- | | 1,7 |
| 51%-54% | D+ | | 1,3 |
| 46%-50% | D | | 1,0 |
| 40%-45% | D- | | 0,7 |
| <39% | F/WU/IC | | 0,0 |

**\* Attendence policy:**

Attendance is required. You are responsible for everything that happens in the class. If you miss a class, ask your friends about materials covered in the class. The parts of the course are very well related to each other. It is a requirement that a student need to attend at least 80% time of course to have the right to take the final exam.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed)  **PhD. Tong Thanh Trung** | *Hanoi, 2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof.Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING**  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Fundamental Laws

Code: LUCS\_1108 Number of Credit: 02

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

Department of Fundamental Law

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** No

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

The course provides the basic knowledge that is about state and law such as: (1) origin, nature of state, type and form of state in general, Vietnam Socialist Republic of state in particular including functions of the state, system of agencies in the state (2) Origin, nature of law, regulative mechanism of law for social relations: legal norm, legal relations, legal implementation, legal violation and liability; (3) The concept of legal form, the legal forms in both the world and Vietnam. (4) Introducing to students fields of Vietnamese laws: Administrative law and Administrative procedure law, civil law and civil procedure law, criminal law and criminal procedure law, business law, intellectual property law, labor law, financial law, land law and environmental law; (5) Supplying the students with basic knowledge of international law.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The course aims to provide students with the fundamental legal concepts, the issues of background legal knowledge which each citizen must be required to have by the society such as: origin, nature of state in general and Vietnam Socialist Republic in particular, identifying connotation of socialist legitimate state, the system of agencies of Vietnam Socialist Republic, function, mission and organizational structure of each agency, the relationship between state and the other institutions in Vietnam political system. Moreover, the course equips the basic knowledge of law such as: concept, nature of law, forming basis of law, the impact of law to social relationships, the consequences of legal application, jurisdiction and applicable procedure of law; the system of Vietnam legal normative documents; the basic fields of Vietnam law; state management, carders, civil servants, public employees, equipment, administrative violations and liability; basic rights and obligations of subjects in property and identity relationships, the issues of non-contract compensation, inheritance, crime, classification of crimes, nature of crime, penalty and the principles of criminal law; the legal business entities and business activities of the entities; intellectual property and methods to protect intellectual property; laws on national budget and national budget distribution; adjusting land using relations, environmental protection and labor relations by laws; the fundamental contents of international law including international public law and international private law.

**6. COURSE CONTENT:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 5 | 3 | 2 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 8 | 4 | 4 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 8 | 4 | 4 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
|  | TOTAL | 30 | 17 | 13 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: THE BASIC ISSUES OF STATE**

*Summary of Chapter 1*

The Chapter 1 introduces to the students basic contents of state in general and Vietnam Socialist Republic in particular such as: origin, nature of state, type and form of state; Vietnam Socialist Republic of state in regard with the formation and development of Vietnam state, the nature of Vietnam state, the basic organization and operation principles of Vietnam state, the system of agencies in Vietnam state.

**1.1. Theoretical issues of state**

1.1.1. Origin of the state

1.1.2. Basic characteristics of the state

1.1.3. Functions of the state

1.1.4. Types of the state

1.1.5. Forms of the state

**1.2. Vietnam socialist republic state**

1.2.1. Formation and development of Vietnam state

1.2.2. Nature of Vietnam state

1.2.3. Basic organization and operation principles of Vietnam state

1.2.4. System of agencies in Vietnam state.***References of chapter 1:***

- The Constitution of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam in 2013;

- The Law on Organization of the National Assembly in 2014;

- The Law on Government Organization in 2001;

- The Law on Court Organization in 2014;

- The Law on Organization of people’s procuracies in 2014;

- The Law on Organization of local government in 2015

**CHAPTER 2: THE FUNDAMENTAL ISSUES OF LAW**

This chapter provides students with origin of law, concept and basic characteristics of law; legal norm, legal relationship, subjects of legal relationship, legal implementation, legal violation and liability.

**2.1. General issues of law**

2.1.1. Origin of law

2.1.2. Concept and basic characteristics of law

2.1.3. Role of law

**2.2. Regulative mechanism of law**

**2.2.1.** Legal norm

2.2.1.1. Concept of the legal norm

2.2.1.2. Structure of the legal norm

**2.2.2. Legal relationship**

2.2.2.1. Concept and characteristics of the legal relationship

2.2.2.2. Component of the legal relationship

2.2.2.3. Legal event

**2.2.3. Legal implementation**

2.2.3.1. Concept and characteristics of the legal consciousness

2.2.3.2. Role of the legal consciousness with activities of the legal implementation

2.2.3.3. Education and improvement the legal implementation

**2.2.4. Legal violation and Liability**

2.2.4.1. **Legal violation**

2.2.4.1.1. Signs ofthelegal violation

2.2.4.1.2. Kinds of legal violation

2.2.4.2. L**iability**

2.2.4.2.1. Concept and characteristics of the liability

2.2.4.2.2. Application basis of the liability

2.2.4.2.3. Kinds of liability

**2.3. Legal form**

2.3.1. Concept of the legal form

2.3.2. Kinds of the legal form

2.3.3. Legal normative documents

2.3.3.1. Concept and characteristic of the legal normative documents

2.3.3.2. Enforcement principle of the legal normative documents

2.3.3.3. System of the legal normative documents

***References of Chapter 2:***

- The Law on Handling Administrative Violations in 2012

- The Penal Code in 2015

- The Civil Code in 2015

- The Law on promulgation of legislative normative documents in 2008;

- The Law on promulgation of legislative normative documents of People's Councils and People's Committee in 2004

**CHAPTER 3: FIELDS OF PUBLIC LAW**

This chapter introduces to students the fields of public law such as: determining the objects, adjusting methods of public legal system; the legal relationships of public legal fields, administrative bodies, administrative legal relationships, administrative procedure; state financial management; the object of land management, state management of land; state environmental management; classification of crimes, criminal punishments under the Vietnam Penal Code, principles and process of punishment application; …

**3.1. Administrative law**

**3.1.1. General issues of the administrative law**

3.1.1.1. General concept ofthe administrative law

3.1.1.1.1. Adjusting objects of the administrative law

3.1.1.1.2. Adjusting methods of the administrative law

3.2.1.1.3. System of the administrative law

3.1.1.1.4. The administrative law in condition of the national administrative innovation program

3.1.1.2. Administrative legal relationship

**3.1.2. Main contents of the administrative law**

3.1.2.1. Administrative body

3.1.2.2. Legal rules of cadres, civil servants, public employees

3.1.2.3. Legal rules of social organization, citizen, foreigner, un-citizenship people

3.1.2.5. Laws on economy practice and corruption prevention

3.1.2.6. Administrative law violation and liability

3.1.2.7. The law of inspection, complaints and denunciation

3.1.2.8. The law ofadministrative procedure

**3.2.** Administrative procedure law

3.2.1. General issues of the administrative procedure law

3.2.1.1. Administrative sues

3.2.1.2. The law ofadministrative procedure

3.2.2. Procedure to solve administrative claims

**3.3. Financial Laws**

**3.3.1. General of the financial law**

3.3.1.1. Concept of the financial law

3.3.1.2. Source of the financial law

**3.3. 2. Main content of the financial law**

3.3.2.1. The law of state national budget

3.3.2.2 The law of tax

**3.4. Land law**

**3.4.1.** General issues of the land law

3.4.1.1. Concept, characteristics of the land law

3.4.1.2. Basic principles of the land law

**3.4.2. Main contents of the land law**

3.4.2.1 Land management body and the public service organization in the land field.

3.4.2.2 Land using people, land using form, right and obligation of land using people

3.4.2.3. The administrative formalities in the land field

**3.5. Environmental law**

**3.5.1. General main issues of the environmental law**

3.5.1.1. Concept of the environmental law

3.5.1.2. Role the environmental law

3.5.1.3. Principles of the environmental law

**3.5.2. Main contents of environmental protection law**

3.5.2.1. The law of control in environmental field

3.5.2.2. The law of treatment in environmental violation

**3.6. Criminal Law of Vietnam**

**3.6.1. Summary of Vietnam criminal Law**

3.6.1.1 Concept, tasks and basic principles of Vietnam criminal law

3.6.1.2 The Penal Code

**3.6.2. Crime**

3.6.2.1 Concept, characteristics and classification of Crime

3.6.2.2 Constitution of Crime

3.6.2.3 Stages of performing Crime

3.6.2.4 Complicity

3.6.2.5 Circumstances exempting the danger of activities for the society

3.6.2.6. Crimes under Vietnam criminal laws

**3.6.3 Punishment and Implementation of Punishment**

3.6.3.1 Definition, characteristics of punishment

3.6.3.2 System of punishments and judicial measures

3.6.3.3 Deciding punishment

3.6.3.4 Institutions related to executing punishment

3.6.3.5 Criminal liability of Juvenile Offenders

**3.7. The criminal procedure of Vietnam**

3.7.1 General summary about the Vietnam criminal procedure

3.7.2 The stages of criminal procedure

***References of Chapter 3:***

- The law on Governmental Organization in 2014

- The law on Handling Administrative Violation in 2012

- The Code of Complaint in 2011

- The Code of Denouncement in 2011

- The Law on Administrative Procedure in 2010

- The Law on Cadres and Civil in 2008

- The Law on public employees in 2010

- The Code of thrift Practice and Waste Combat

- The Criminal Procedure Code in 2003

- The Law on Land in 2013.

- The Law on Environmental Protection in 2014

**CHAPTER 4: FIELDS OF PRIVATE LAW**

Chapter 4 provides students with fundamental knowledge of the private law such as: regulated objects and methods of civil law; property and possessive right, civil obligation and contract, compensation liability, non- contract compensation, the identification of civil procedure, the jurisdiction and solved proceedings of civil case; the knowledge of intellectual property such as: copyright, copyright-related rights, industrial property right, the right to plant varieties, domestic animal, the content of protection rights, determining the behavior of intellectual property violation and protective method; the basic knowledge of labor such as: subjects of labor relation, labor contract, collective labor agreement, salary, working hours, break hours, labor discipline, labor dispute and strike issues, settlement of strike.

**4.1. Vietnam civil law**

***4.1.1. General concepts of civil law***

5.1.1. Adjusted subjects and methods of civil law

5.1.2. Civil law and system of the civil law

***4.1.2. Main contents of civil law***

4.1.2.1. Property and property right

4.1.2.2. Civil obligations and civil contract

4.1.2.3. non - contract compensation

**4.2. Vietnam civil procedure**

4.2.1. General issues of the civil procedure law

4.2.2. Subjects of the civil legal procedure relationship

4.2.3. Jurisdiction of court

4.2.4. Civil procedure

**4.3. Intellectual property law**

**4.3.1 General summary of the intellectual property law**

4.3.1.1 Definitions, characteristics of the intellectual property law

4.3.1.2 System of the intellectual property law

**4.3.2. Main contents of the intellectual property law**

4.3.2.1. Protecting copyright and copyright-related rights

4.3.2.2. Protecting industrial property rights

4.3.2.3. Protecting right to plant varieties

4.3.2.4. Protecting intellectual property rights

**4.4. Labour law**

**4.4.1. General issues of the labour law**

4.4.1.1. Subjects of the labour law

4.4.1.2. The fundamental principles of labour law

4.4.1.3. The Labour law in the legal system of Vietnam

**4.4.2. Fundamental contents of the labour law**

4.4.2.1. Labour contract

4.4.2.2. Collective labour agreement

4.4.2.3. Salary

4.4.2.4. Working hours and Break hours

4.4.2.5. Labour discipline

4.4.2.6. Labour disputes and settlement of labour disputes

4.4.2.7. Strike and settlement of strike

**4.5. Business law**

***4.5.1. General issues of business subjects***

4.5.1.1. Basic concepts such as: business subject, enterprise, trade

4.5.1.2. Classification of business subjects

4.5.1.3. Terms, procedure of enterprise establishment

***4.5.2. Business organization forms under Vietnam law***

4.5.2.1. Private enterprise

4.5.2.2. Partnerships

4.5.2.3. Joint Stock Companies

4.5.2.4. Limited liability companies with two or more members.

4.5.2.5. Single-member limited liability companies

4.5.2.6. Other business institutions

***4.5.3. Law of commercial contract***

4.5.3.1. Definition, characteristics of commercial contract

4.5.3.2. Kind of main commercial contract

***References of Chapter 4:***

*-* The Civil Code in 2015

- The Civil procedure Code in 2004

- The Law on intellectual property in 2009

- The labour Code in 2012.- The Law on Social insurance in 2006.

- The Law on Enterprises in 2005, 2014;

- The Commercial Law in 2005

**CHAPTER 5: INTERNATIONAL LAW**

The chapter provides the students with fundamental knowledge of international law such as: subjects of international public law, implementation mechanism for rules in international public law, principles of international public law; a number of basic contents of international private law.

**5.1. General issues of international law**

**5.2 The International law**

5.2.1 Common issues of the international law

5.2.1.1 Common issues of the international law

a. Concepts of the international law

b. Resources of the international law

5.2.1.2 Common issues of the international law

a. Concepts

b. Subjects of the international law

c. Mechanisms to enforce the rules of international law

d. Basic principles of international law

5.2.2 Some main contents of international law

5.2.2.1. Population in international law

5.2.2.2. National territory

5.2.2.3. International maritime law

5.2.2.4. International Aviation Law

5.2.2.5. International organizations and the International Conference

5.2.2.6. Diplomatic and Consular Law

5.2.2.7. International dispute settlement and international arbitration body

5.2.2.8 International legal liability

**5.3.** **International private law**

**5.3.1 Introduction of International private law**

5.3.1.1. Definition of the international private law

a. Regulative Objects

b. Regulative Scope

c. Regulative methods

5.3.1.2. Resources of the international private law

**5.3.2 Some main contents of the International private law**

5.3.2.1 Conflict of laws and legal conflict resolution

5.3.2.2 Conflicts of competence and resolve conflicts over jurisdiction in the International private law

5.3.2.3 Ownership and inheritance of the private international law

5.3.2.4 Labor relations, marriage and family in the private international law

5.3.2.5 International Civil Procedure

5.3.2.6 Settlement of civil disputes involving foreign elements by arbitration

*References of Chapter 5*

- The Law on promulgation legal normative document in 2008;

- The Code of signing, joining and implementing international treaties in 2005

- The Civil Code in 2005

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

- Fundamental law curriculum, Faculty of Law, National Economics University;

- Vietnam Labour Law, Associates Professor Nguyen Huu Vien, Master Hoang Xuan Truong; National Economics University Publish House. 2011.

- Theory of state and Law curriculum, Faculty of Law, National Economics University of Hanoi in 1997

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

The legal documents are showed at the references of each chapter.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

An overall and on – going policy will be applied as the table below:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| No. | Contents | Percentage (%) |
| 1 | Participation | 10 |
| 2 | - Individual Test: | 40 |
| 3 | - Final exam: | 50 |

Notes:

\* Individual assessment is based on the two writing assignments or group work

\* In order to take the final exam students have to:

\* Have at least 80% class participation

\* Mark grade of 10 is applied. Lecturer’s assessment mark and middle term mark are taken to integers only. The final exam mark is taken to 0.5. The module standard mark is taken to a decimal.

\* The final exam is under the written format.

*Hanoi, August 15, 2019*

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **Assco. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------------------** | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

1. **COURSE NAME:** Microeconomics 1

Code: KHMI1101 Number of Credits: 03

1. **DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

*Department of Microeconomics*

**Office:** Room 3.3, Buiding No. 10  
**Office Hours:** 8:00-16:30, Monday-Friday  
**Office Telephone:** 0436283571

1. **PRE-REQUISITE:**

Students learned Maths and known English vocabulary to understand the basic concept of economics.

1. **COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Microeconomics 1 is presented to help students understand the basic economic principles of microeconomics. Structural lectures are presented simply and reasonably while ensuring modern. The contents were according with the basic concept of the market: supply and demand, elasticity of demand and supply, consumer behavior, business behavior (Production - cost - profit), perfect competition and monopoly, the supply and demand for labor, market failures.

1. **COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

After finishing the module, students should understand the principles of microeconomics, which is the foundation for the study of the subject Microeconomics 2. Besides, students can initially apply microeconomics to explain some of the economic matters.

1. **COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | **Chapter 1: Introduction** | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 2 | **Chapter 2: Supply and Demand Theory** | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 3 | **Chapter 3: Elasticity** | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 4 | **Chapter 4: Utility Theory** | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 5 | **Chapter 5: Production, Cost and Profit** | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 6 | **Chapter 6: Market Structures** | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 7 | **Chapter 7: The Labor Market** | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 8 | **Chapter 8: Market Failure** | 4 | 3 | 1 |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |

### CHAPTER 1: Introduction

This chapter provides the overview of economics in general and the two basic parts of economics to be micro-economics and macroeconomics. The main purpose of the chapter is to introduce scarcity - an economic reality of every society and how tosolution for issues in the economic mechanisms. Besides, the chapter also presents the major economic Concepts to affect to the decision-making choices of the members in the economy.

***Contents:***

**1.1 Introducing economics**

1. **Economics** and **Economy**
2. What is economics about?

**1.2 Contents and research methods**

1.2.1. Contents of Microeconomics

1.2.2. Research methods of Microeconomics

**1.3 Key Concepts in Economics**

1.3.1. The Law of Scarcity

1.3.2. Opportunity Cost

1.3.3. The Law of Increasing Opportunity Cost

1.3.4. Production Possibility Frontier

1.3.5. Marginal Analysis - Optimal Selection Method

***References:***

1. National Economics University. *Economics Textbook*. 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date). National Economics Publishing House: Chapter I; page 3 - 29
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University). Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges. Education Publishing House. 2010: Chapter I; page 5- 32
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University). Practice Guides to Microeconomics. Labour and Social Publisher. 2010: Chapter I
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University). Microeconomics Exercises. Labour and Social Publisher. 2010: Chapter I; page 5 -21 (Exercise No. 1.1 – 1.15)

### CHAPTER 2: Supply and Demand Theory

The theory about supply and demand is one of the most important issues of economics, built on the basis of supply and demand model. Supply and demand model is a simple tool but it is very useful in economic analysis. Supply and demand model describes the interaction between producers and consumers to determine the price and quantity of the goods or services be traded in the market. Besides, supply and demand model helps you understand the impact of government policies such as price policy, international trade ...

***Contents:***

**2.1 Demand**

2.1.1 Effects of Price

2.1.2 Determinants of Demands

2.1.3 The Demand Functions

2.1.4 Individual and Market Demand

**2.2 Supply**

2.2.1 Effects of Price

2.2.2 Determinants of Supply

2.2.3 The Supply Functions

2.2.4 Individual and Market Supply

**2.3 Market Equilibrium**

2.3.1 Using a Graph to Determine the Equilibrium

2.3.2 Using Math to Determine the Equilibrium

2.3.3 Forces That Drive the Market to Equilibrium

**2.4. Changes in Market Equilibrium**

2.4.1 Effects of a Shift in the Demand Curve

2.4.2 Effects of a Shift in the Supply Curve

2.4.3 Effects of Shifts in both Demand and Supply Curve

**2.5. Effects of Government Interventions**

2.5.1 Effects of Taxes

2.5.2Effects of Price Controls

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter II; page 45 – 82.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter II; page 33- 54.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter II
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter II; page 22 -31 (Exercise No. 2.1 – 2.7).

### CHAPTER 3: Elasticity of Demand and Supply

The supply and demand model shows that the demand depends on the price, the consumers’ income and the prices of related goods. Similarly, the supply depends on price and factors affecting the cost of production. This chapter studies the elasticity of demand and supply – to quantify changes in demand and supply when there are changes in prices and other factors affecting buyers and sellers. The main types of elasticity are studied including the price elasticity of demand, income elasticity of demand, cross-price elasticity of demand and the price elasticity of supply.

***Contents:***

**3.1. Price Elasticity of Demand**

3.1.1. Definition and Formula

3.1.2. Calculating

3.1.3. Classification

3.1.4. Price Elasticity of the Demand and Total Revenue

3.1.5. Determinants

3.1.6. Meaning

**3.2. Cross-Price Elasticity of Demand**

3.2.1. Definition and Formula

3.2.2. Calculating

3.2.3. Classification

3.2.4. Meaning

**3.3. Income Elasticity of Demand**

3.3.1. Definition and Formula

3.3.2. Calculating

3.3.3. Classification

3.3.4. Meaning

**3.4. Price Elasticity of Supply**

3.4.1. Definition and Formula

3.4.2. Calculating

3.4.3. Classification

3.4.4. Determinants

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter III; page 95– 123.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter II; page 78- 92.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter III.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter III; page 44 -59 (Exercise No. 3.1 – 3.20).

### CHAPTER 4: Utility Theory

This chapter analyzes the behavior of rational consumers (individuals and households) on the goods and services markets. The main content of the chapter is Utility Theory (Cardinal Utility Theory), and other theories as Comparable Utility Theory (Budget and Indifference Analysis) and Reveable Preference Theory will be studied in Microeconomics 2. Utility Theory is a simple approach, although it has many shortcomings, it still explains how consumers to use their incomes and how to maximize the utility in budgetary constraints.

***Contents:***

**4.1. The basic concepts**

4.1.1. Definition and Formula and the Cardinal Utility Assumption

4.1.3. Principle of Diminishing Marginal Utility

4.1.4. Marginal Utility and Demand Curves

4.1.5. Consumer Surplus

**4.2. Optimal Consumer Choice**

4.2.1. Principles for Maximizing the Utility of Consumers

4.2.2. Consumer Equilibrium

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* The *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter IV; page 125 – 139.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter III; page 60- 70.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter IV.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter VI; page 60 -63 (Exercise No. 4.1 – 4.2).

### CHAPTER 5: Production, Cost and Profit

Chapter 4 focuses on demands basing on the analysis of consumer behavior, and you ignored the question: how were the goods and services produced? This chapter examines supply regarding the behavior of the production and supply decisions in order to achieve the profit maximum.

***Contents:***

**5.1. Production**

5.1.1. Production Functions

5.1.2. Short-Run Production: One Variable Input

**5.2. Costs**

5.2.1. Resource Costs

5.2.2. Economic vs. Accounting Costs

5.2.3. Short-Run Costs

**5.3. Profit**

5.3.1. Definition and Formula

5.3.2. Economic vs. Accounting Profit

5.3.3. Determinants of Profit

5.3.4. The rule of Profit Maximization

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter VI; page 215- 220; page 229 -239; page 249 -255.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter IV; page 93-99 and page 106 -113.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter V.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter V; page 77 -88 (Exercise No. 5.1 – 5.7).

### CHAPTER 6: Market Structures

In this chapter, you study the traditional market structures and the production decisions of firms in each market structure. The chapter content focuses on perfect competition and monopoly. Besides, the chapter introduces main characteristics of monopolistic competition and oligopoly. The detailed content of these market structures is shown in Microeconomics 2.

***Contents:***

**6.1. Market types**

6.1.1. The basic concepts

6.1.2. Market Classification

**6.2. The Perfectly Competitive Market**

6.2.1. Characteristics of Perfectly Competitive Market

6.2.2. The Production Decision in the Short Run

6.2.3. The Break-even point and the Shutdown point

6.2.4. Demand Curve of Perfectly Competitive Firm and Market in the Short Run

6.2.5. Analysis the impact of government intervention on market

**6.3. Monopoly**

6.3.1. Characteristics of Monopoly

6.3.2. Sources of Monopoly

6.3.3. Demand Curve and Marginal Revenue for the Monopolist

6.3.4. The Monopolist’s Production Decision

**6.4. Market Imperfections**

6.4.1 Characteristics and the basic contents of Monopolistic Competition

6.4.2. Characteristics and the basic contents of Oligopoly

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter VII; page 285- 298*.* page 305-319; Chapter VIII; page 329 -340.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter V; page 138- 141*.* page 141- 144*.* page153 -155*.* page 166 -167 and page 174 -175.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter VI.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter VI; page 100 -135 (Exercise No. 6.1 – 6.11 and Exercise No. 6.15 -6.27).

CHAPTER 7: The Labor Market

This chapter studies the important inputs of firms that is the labor market. The chapter content is the principle of optimal labors, relations between marginal revenue product and labor demand curve, properties of individual labor supply curve and the labor supply curve of market. Besides, the chapter also analyzes the equilibrium of labor competition market.

***Contents:***

* 1. **Labor Demand**

7.1.1. Firm Labor Demand

7.1.2. Market Labor Demand Curves

7.1.3. Factors That Change Labor Demand

**7.2. Labor Supply**

7.2.1. Individual Labor Supply

7.2.2. Market Labor Supply Curves

7.2.3. Factors That Change Labor Supply

**7.3. Competitive Labor Market Equilibrium**

7.3.1 Competitive Labor Market Equilibrium

7.3.2. Changes in Market Equilibrium

***References:***

1. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House: Chapter XI; page 411 - 417; page 421 – 426.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010: Chapter VI; page 177 -201.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Practice Guides to Microeconomics*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter VII.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* Microeconomics Exercises*.* Labour and Social Publisher*.* 2010: Chapter VII; page 136 -152 (Exercise No. 7.1 – 7.14).

### CHAPTER 8: Market failure

In the previous chapters, the market operation bases on the interaction of supply and demand, the market works efficiently and solves relatively well three basic economic matters. However, in some cases, the market cannot achieve the most optimal state and requires government intervention. This chapter studies the situations (market failure) should be required the government intervention.

***Contents:***

**8.1. Operation of the market**

8.1.1. Pareto efficient point

8.1.2. The causes of market failure

**8.2. Market failure and government intervention**

8.2.1. Externalities

8.2.2. Public goods

8.2.3. Imperfect Competition

8.2.4. Unfair Income Distribution

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Economics Textbook*, 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date), National Economics Publishing House: Chapter XI; page 495-530.
2. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University), Micro*Economics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges, Education Publishing House, 2010: Chapter VII; page 218- 227.
3. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University), Practice Guides to Microeconomics, Labour and Social Publisher, 2010: Chapter XIII.
4. Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University), Microeconomics Exercises, Labour and Social Publisher, 2010: Chapter VIII; page 153 -162 (Exercise No. 8.1 – 8.6).
5. **REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS:**
6. National Economics University*.* *Economics Textbook.* 2012 (Published in the 55th anniversary of the National Economic University’s founding date)*.* National Economics Publishing House

Department of Microeconomics (National Economics University)*.* *MicroEconomics Textbook* – The standard textbook for universities and colleges*.* Education Publishing House*.* 2010.

1. **Recommended Texts & Other Readings:**
2. David Begg*.* Stanley Fischer*.* Rudiger Doorbusch*.* *Econonmics.* Third Edition*.* 1991*.* McGraw Hill
3. Michasl Parkin*.* *Microeconmics* - Fourth Edition*.* 1990*.* Addison-Wesley
4. Robert S. Pindyck*.* DanielL. Rubinfeld*.* *Microeconomics.* Second Edition*.* 1992*.* Macmillan
5. Paul A.Samuelson&William D.Nordhaus*.* *Economics.* Forteenth Edition*.* McGran Hill*.* 1992
6. Bradley R.Schiller*.* *The Microeconomy today.* Fourth Edition*.* Randan House*.* 1989
7. **ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

The student’s result based on the final test (70%), the mid-term test (20%) and participation class (10%).

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  **Dr. Dinh Thien Duc** | *Hanoi, , 2019*  **PRESIDENT**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** | |
| **MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING**  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | | | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** | |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Macroeconomics 1

Code: KHMA1101 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Macroeconomics

**Office:** 804, Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm from Mondays to Fridays  
**Office Telephone:** 04.36280280/5147

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Non

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course introduces the fundamentals of macroeconomic theory and explains their relevance to daily macroeconomic issues. It examines the behavior of macroeconomic variables, such as national income, unemployment, inflation and exchange rates. The short run economic fluctuations and the role of monetary and fiscal policies are also discussed in this chapter.

At the end of the course students will be able to understand basic macroeconomic issues in the world. In particular, students may be able to answer questions such as why some countries have high inflation rates while others have lower and more stable price level. How can we explain fluctuations of national economic activities? How can macroeconomic policies be used to fight against unemployment and inflation?

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The aim of this course is to provide an understanding of the most important concepts in macroeconomics and the functions of some macroeconomic models. At the end of the course students should be able to:

* have a basicunderstanding of the definition and importance of the following Macroeconomic concepts: Gross Domestic Product, Consumer Price Index, Inflation, Unemployment, the Exchange Rate and the Balance of Payments;
* have an understanding of the role of money, how it is created and how it can affect the economy;
* have an understanding of the exchange rate market and how important it is in an open economy.
* be able to construct and use aggregate demand and aggregate supply model to analyze short run fluctuations and long run adjustment of the macroeconomy;
* have an understanding of and be able to use the AD-AS model to analyze the effects of fiscal policy and monetary policy;

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6  Chapter 7  Chapter 8 | 3  7  6  7  7  5  5  5 | 3  4  4  4  4  3  3  3 | 0  3  2  3  3  2  2  2 | *Lecture room with microphone and projector* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **28** | **17** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION**

This chapter introduces basic concepts, the objects and methodology of the study.

* 1. The object of the study and some basic concepts
  2. Methodology

Texts and readings: Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 14.

**CHAPTER 2: MEASURING NATIONAL INCOME**

**AND THE COST OF LIVING**

This chapter presents the concepts and measurement of GDP and CPI and their applications in the real world.

2.1. Gross domestic product (GDP)

2.1.1. Definition

2.1.2. Methods for calculation of GDP

2.1.3. Other measures of national income: GNP, NNP, NI and DPI

2.1.4. Nominal and real GDP and GDP deflator

2.1.5. GDP and economic well-being

2.2. Consumer price index (CPI)

2.2.1. Definition

2.2.2. Method for calculation of CPI

2.2.3. CPI and GDP deflator

2.2.4. Practical examples

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 14
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 2
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch 23 & 24.

**CHAPTER 3: AGGREGATE DEMAND AND AGGREGATE SUPPLY**

This chapter constructs the aggregate demand and aggregate supply model which is widely used to explain short-run economic fluctuations. The role of stabilization policy will also be presented in this chapter.

3.1. Aggregate demand and aggregate supply

1. The aggregate demand curve
2. The aggregate supply curve
3. Equilibrium output and prices

3.2. Explaining short run economic fluctuations and the role of stabilization policy

1. Demand shocks
2. Supply shocks

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 18
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 6
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Chapter 33.

**CHAPTER 4: AGGREGATE DEMAND AND FISCAL POLICY**

This chapter focuses on the role of aggregate demand in the economy. It examines the components, the determinants and the role of aggregate demand in determining output in an economy with under-employment of resources. Fiscal policy and government budget are also discussed in the chapter.

4.1. Keynesian cross framework

4.1.1. The aggregate expenditure (AE) and equilibrium output

4.1.1. The expenditure multiplier

4.2. The determinants of aggregate expenditure

4.2.1. Consumption

4.2.2. Investment

4.2.3. Government spending

4.2.4. Net exports

4.3. The AE line and the determination of equilibrium output in a simple economy

4.3.1. The AE line

4.3.2. Equilibrium output

4.3.3. The expenditure multiplier

4.4. The AE line and the determination of equilibrium output in a closed economy

4.4.1. The AE line

4.4.2. Equilibrium output

4.4.3. The expenditure and tax multipliers

4.5. The AE line and the determination of equilibrium output in an open economy

4.5.1. The AE line

4.5.2. Equilibrium output

4.5.3. The expenditure multiplier

4.6. Fiscal policy

4.6.1. Active fiscal policy

4.6.2. Fiscal policy and government deficit

4.6.3. Government deficit financing

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 19
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 7
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch 34.

**CHAPTER 5: MONEY AND MONETARY POLICY**

This chapter discusses the concepts and the functions of money, monetary system, the role of central bank in controlling money supply and its effects on macroeconomic variables such as interest rates, investment, aggregate demand, output and prices.

5.1. Money

5.1.1. The meaning of money

5.1.2. The functions of money

5.1.3. Types of money

5.1.4. Measures of the money stock

5.2. Money supply

5.2.1. Banks and money supply

5.2.2. The determinants of money supply

5.2.3. Tools of monetary control by the central bank.

5.3. Money demand

5.3.1. Motives for holding money

5.3.2. Determinants of money demand

5.4. Money market and equilibrium interest rates

* + 1. Money supply curve
    2. Money demand curve
    3. Money market equilibrium

5.5. Monetary policy

5.5.1. The effects of a money supply change on interest rates, investment, output and prices

5.5.2. The determinants of some effects of monetary policy

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 20
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 8
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch. 34.

**CHAPTER 6: UNEMPLOYMENT**

This chapter presents the concepts, measurement, and the causes and consequences of unemployment in the economy.

6.1. Definiton and measurement

6.2. Natural unemployment

6.2.1. Frictional unemployment

6.2.2. Structural unemployment

6.2.3. Classical unemployment

6.3. Cyclical unemployment

6.4. Consequences of unemployment

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 17
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 5
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch 28.

**CHAPTER 7: INFLATION**

This chapter presents the concepts, measurement, causes and consequences of inflation in the economy.

7.1. Definition and measurement

7.2. Causes of inflation

7.2.1. Demand pull inflation

7.2.2. Cost push inflation

7.2.3. Expected inflation

7.2.4. Money and inflation

7.3. Consequences of inflation

7.3.1. Costs of inflation

7.3.1. The relationship between inflation and unemployment

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 22
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 9
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch 29.

**CHAPTER 8: MACROECONOMICS OF THE OPEN ECONOMY**

This chapter discusses basic concepts of the open economy including balance of payments, exchange rate and exchange market, and impacts of a change in exchange rate in the economy.

8.1. Balance of payments

8.2. Exchange rate

8.2.1. Nominal and real exchange rate

8.2.2. Foreign exchange market and its equilibrium

8.2.3. The impacts of a change in exchange rate in the economy

8.3. Exchange rate regimes

8.3.1. Floating system

8.3.2. Fixed system

8.3.3. Managed-floating system

Texts and readings:

1. Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 27
2. Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, 2012, Chapter 10
3. N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004, Ch 30.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

### Economics Textbook (Volumn II), National Economics University Publishing House, 2012.

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* Nguyễn Văn Công (Editor), Bài tập Nguyên lý Kinh tế học vĩ mô, Labour Publishing House, , 2012
* N. Gregory Mankiw, Principles of Economics, International Student Edition, Third Edition, Thomson, 2004.
* Joseph E. Stiglitz & Carl E. Walsh, Economics, Third Edition, Norton & Company, 2002.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

Course assessment will be based on attendance (10%), a midterm test/presentation (20%) and a final exam (70%).

*Hanoi, August 15, 2019*

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  **Assoc. Prof. PhD Pham The Anh** | **PRESIDENT**  **Assc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME: PROBABILITY THEORY**

Code: TOKT1105 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Mathematical Economics

Office: Building A1  
Office Hours: \*Times & Days  
Office Telephone**:** (084) 04 3628 3007

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Analysis A1, Analysis A2, Algebra.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This subject provides learners with foundation knowledge of probability theory that is necessary for understanding specialized subjects later. It approaches the probability theory by Kolmogorov’axiomatic system based on measure theory of the Advanced Mathematics (for students majoring in in Applied Mathematics in Economics). The concepts and results of the probability theory are built and explained in detail with a wide range of exercises giving students a coherent and logical knowledge system. This subject also introduces some basic concepts of stochastic process that is completed in Foundation of mathematical finance subject.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

This course provides basic knowledge of the probability theory, helping students to gain a necessary tool in processing random phenomena, especially in social economic ones. On the other hand, it helps students to learn relevant subjects such as: Mathematical statistics, Application statistics, Econometrics, and Foundation of mathematical finance.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6 | 9  9  9  11  4  3 | 6  6  6  7  3  2 | 3  3  3  4  1  1 | *Practice with computer software and report in group.* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**CHAPTER 1 – RANDOM EVENT AND PROBABILITY**

This chapter introduces basic concepts of probability theory from the point of measurement. The concept of probability is built on the Kolmogorov’ axiomatic system. Properties of probability are proved by the results of the measurement theory. On this basis, this chapter also introduces the concept of conditional probability, independence events, independence experiment, from which basic probability formula are presented in later chapters.

1.1. Probability

1.1.1. Experiment and space of events

1.1.2. Relation of events

1.1.3. Algebra - σ

1.1.4. Axiomatic definition of probability

1.1.5. Some inceptive definition of probability

1.1.6. Large probability principle, small probability principle

1.2. Conditional probability

1.2.1. Concepts of conditional probability

1.2.2. Rule of join

1.2.3. Rule of union

1.2.4. Total probability and Bayes’ Theorem

1.3. Independence

1.3.1. Independence of events

1.3.2. Independence of experiments

1.3.3. Bernulli formula

References of the chapter:

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture notes.

2 - Dang Hung Thang, 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**CHAPTER 2 – RANDOM VARIABLE AND PROBABILITY DISTRIBUTION**

With the concepts of random event and probability measure being presented in Chapter 1, this chapter presents random variables and their probability distribution. The random variable is introduced from one-dimension to twodimensions and then expanded to multi-dimensions. Concept of function of random variable function and its probability distribution are also introduced. The necessary and sufficient conditions for systems of two or more independent random variables are proved in detail.

2.1. One dimensional random variable

2.1.1. Concept

2.1.2. Probability distribution function

2.1.3. Discrete random variables

2.1.4. Continuous random variables

2.2. Two dimensional random variables

2.2.1. Concept

2.2.2. Probability distribution function

2.2.3. Discrete two dimensions random variables

2.2.4. Continuous two dimensions random variables

2.2.5. Independence of random variables

2.3. Multidimensional random variable

2.3.1. Concept

2.3.2. Probability distribution function

2.3.3. Discrete-multidimensional random variables

2.3.4. Continuous-multidimensional random variables

2.3.5. Independence of multidimensional random variables

2.3.6. Concept of random samples

2.4. Function of random variables

2.4.1. Functions of a random variable

2.4.2. Functions of various random variables

References of the chapter :

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

2 - Đinh Van Gang, 2003, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Education Publishing House.

3 - Dang Hung Thang, 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

4 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**CHAPTER 3 – CHARACTERISTIC PARAMETERS OF RANDOM VARIABLE**

This chapter introduces characteristic parameters of random variables: expectation, variance, standard deviation., etc. This characteristic parameters are determined through probability distribution of random variables. This chapter also introduces an approach with random variables by characteristic functions. Properties of characteristic functions and relationships with the moments are introduced.

3.1. Characteristic parameters of one dimension random variable

3.1.1. Expectation

3.1.2. Moments

3.1.3. Variance and standard deviation

3.1.4. Other characteristic parameters

3.2. Characteristic parameters of two dimension random variables

3.2.1. Expectation of functions of random variable two

3.2.2. Moments

3.2.3. Correlation moments and linear correlation coefficient

3.3. Characteristic parameters of multidimensional random variables

3.4. Characteristic functions

3.4.1. Concept and properties

3.4.2. Relationship between the moments and characteristic functions

3.4.3. Relationship between the distribution functions and characteristic functions

References of the chapter:

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

2 - Đang Hung Thang , 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**CHAPTER 4 – SOME COMMON PROBABILITY DISTRIBUTION**

This chapter introduces some common probability distributions. The probability distributions are introduced from discrete to continuous and demonstrate the link between the rules. With distributions: chi-squared, student, fisher, this chapter focuses only on constructing laws, the relationship between them and defining characteristic parameters, and critical value excluding application exercises. The application of these laws is will be presented in the mathematical statistics and other subjects. This chapter also introduces two- dimensional standard law for future research. Similarly, multi-dimensional cases can be expanded. 4.1. Discrete distribution

4.1.1. Bernoulli distribution

4.1.2. Binomial distribution

4.1.3. Hypergeometric distribution

4.1.4. Possion distribution

4.2. Continuous distribution

4.2.1. Special integrals

4.2.2. Uniform distribution

4.2.3. Normal distribution

4.2.4. Chi-Squared distribution

4.2.5. Student distribution

4.2.6. Fisher distribution

4.3. Multi-dimensional Standard Distribution

4.3.1. Concept

4.3.2. Uncorrelation and independence

4.3.3. Regression function

References of the chapter:

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

2 - Đang Hung Thang, 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**CHAPTER 5 – SOME THEOREMS ON THE CONVERGENCE**

This chapter introduces convergence: convergence in probability, convergence in mean square and convergence in distribution. It also presents Law of large numbers and Limit theorems as a basis theory for the mathematical Statisticsstatistical and other application subjects.

5.1. Concept of convergence

5.1.1. Convergence in probability

5.1.2. Convergence in mean square

5.1.3. Convergence in distribution

5.2. Law of large numbers

5.2.1. Trebusep’ inequality

5.2.2. Trebusep’s Theorem

5.2.3. Bernoulli’s Theorem

5.3. Limit theorem in probability

5.3.1. Concept of approximately normal

5.3.2. Local limit theorem

5.3.3. Integral limit theorem

5.3.4. Central limit theorem

*References of the chapter:*

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

2 - Đand Hung Thang , 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**CHAPTER 6 - INTRODUCE ABOUT STOCHASTIC PROCESS**

Chapter 6 introduces some basic knowledge about the theory of stochastic process to help the student with the original look of this concept. This theory will continue to be completed in the following subjects.

6.1. Stochastic process

6.1.1. Concept of stochastic process

6.1.2. Classification of stochastic process

6.2. Markov process

6.2.1. Markov chain

6.2.2. Markov process

References of the chapter:

1 - Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

2 - Đang Hung Thang , 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 – Nguyen Duy Tien and Vu Viet Yen, 2001, Probability Theory , Education Publishing House.

4 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS**

Nguyen Manh The, Probability Theory lecture note.

### 8. TEXTBOOKS AND OTHER READINGS

1 - Đinh Van Gang, 2003, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Education Publishing House.

2 - Đang Hung Thang, 2002, Probability Exercise, Education Publishing House.

3 - Nguyen Duy Tien and Vu Viet Yen, 2001, Probability Theory , Education Publishing House.

4 - A.N. Kolmogorov, A.N. Shiryayev, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, Selected Works of A.N. Kolmogorov: vol. 2.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

* Attendance (min 80%): 10%
* Discussion and homework: Complete all requirement
* Practice and presentation: 30%
* Final exam: 60%.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed)  **PhD. Nguyen Manh The** | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof.Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME:** **Monetary and Financial Theories 1**

Code: NHLT1101 Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University  
**Office Hours:** 9am – 5pm, from Monday to Friday

**3. PRE-REQUISITE**:

Before attending this course, students had to finish the following courses:

- The General Principles of Marxism-Leninism

- Microeconomics 1

- Macroeconomics 1

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**:

Monetary and financial theories 1 is a compulsory course. The course is designed to provide students with the understanding of money, banking and financial markets. The course is focused on the concepts of money, the structure of financial system, players and financial instruments of financial markets, financial intermediaries (i.e. commercial banks for the course), interest rates (i.e. how to calculate and the determinants of interest rate in the market). The other topics covered in this course are the central bank operations when implimenting monetary policy and the money supply process related to commercial bank operations.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**:

The course provides students basic knowledge of money and finance, which helps them study modules of each major in-depth.

***After completing the course, students will be able to:***

* Understand the nature of money, and distinguish between concepts of money and finance; understand the basic functions of money in an economy, and be able to analyze the functions of money; give examples to demonstrate these functions.
* Understand the evolution of the payments system over time; understand ways of money measument through the concepts of monetary aggregates.
* Understand the structure of the financial system and its components, as well as the vital roles of the financial system to the economy.
* Demonstrate the flow of funds through financial markets, and analyze the basic function and the roles of financial markets.
* Describe and analyze the structure of financial markets; compare the essential features of different types of financial markets and analyze the characteristics of financial market instruments.
* Explain the meaning and the way to measure basic types of interest rates.
* Explain the meaning of the concepts of present value and calculate the present values of a single future payment or a future cash flow.
* Compare and differentiate the basic types of interest rates in the economy. Distinguish between interest rates and rates of return (returns).
* List and explain all the basic components of a bank’s balance sheet; understand the definition of a commercial bank and its functions; demonstrate and analyze the basic operation of a bank.
* Analyse a central bank structure; apply into reality their understanding about the structure of central banks in some countries, the special structure of European Central Bank, and the origin of the State bank of Vietnam; understanding that each nation has its own structure of the central bank and each structure has certain effects on the implimentation of monetary policy.
* Understand the targets of the implimentation of the money policy and the relationship among them; be able to analyze the use of tools in the monetary policy in achieving the targets.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**:

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| *No.* | *Contents* | *Total hours* | *In details* | | *Notes* |
| *Theory* | *Practice, Discussion, Exams* |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6  Chapter 7  Chapter 8 | 5  3  5  4  7  7  7  7 | 3  2  3  3  4  5  5  5 | 2  1  2  1  3  2  2  2 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

## CHAPTER 1: BASIC MONETARY AND FINANCIAL ISSUES

Money and finance are economic categories associated with goods production and circulation. It plays an important role in accelerating the socioeconomic development of each country. To understand this role, this chapter provides students basic concepts of money and finance, from which it helps students study their invention and development process.

* 1. The nature of money

1.1.1. The invention of money

* + 1. The nature of money

1.2. The functions of money

1.2.1. The functions of money according to K.Marx’s theory

1.2.2. The functions of money according to modern economic theory

1.3. The evolution of the payments system

1.3.1. Commodity money

1.3.2. Fiat money

1.3.3. Credit money

1.4. Monetary system

1.4.1. Bimetallism

1.4.2. Gold standard

1.4.3. Gold bullion standard

1.4.4. Gold exchange standard

1.4.5. Foreign currency standard

1.4.6. Pure fiat standard

1.5. Monetary aggregates

1.5.1. Definition

1.5.2. Measurement

1.6. The nature of finance

1.6.1. The invention of finance

1.6.2. The nature of finance

1.7. The functions of finance

1.7.1. Distribution function

1.7.2. Management function

Texts and readings for the chapter:

*1. Chapter 1 “The fundamentals of money and finance” Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market” The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*
2. *Lê Vinh Danh (1996), “Money and banking activity”, The National Political Publishing House*
3. *Websites of banking and financial institutions*
4. *Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 2: FINANCIAL SYSTEM**

This chapter introduces the roles and functions of financial system in the economy, its structure and the relationship between its components, as well as the Government’s management policy toward the national financial system.

2.1. Overview of financial system

2.1.1. Definition

2.1.2. Financial system model in the economy

2.1.3. The components of financial system

2.2. The functions and roles of financial system

2.2.1. The functions of financial system

2.2.2. The roles of financial system in economic development

2.3. State management towards financial system

2.3.1. Objective

2.3.2. Management content

Texts and readings for the chapter:

*1. Chapter 2 “Overview of financial system” Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market”, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*
2. *Websites of banking and financial institutions*
3. *Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 3: STATE BUDGET**

This chapter studies the expenditure source used for the existence and operation of the government and public goods supply. How the governments use this source and how they manage the mobilization and utilization of this source? These are basic issues covered in this chapter.

3.1. Overview of state budget

3.1.1. Definition

3.1.2. Roles

3.2. State budget revenue

3.2.1. Definition

3.2.2. Characteristics

3.2.3. Contents

3.3. State budget expenditure

3.3.1. Definition

3.3.2. Characteristics

3.3.3. Contents

3.4. State budget deficit

3.4.1. Definition

3.4.2. Causes

3.4.3. Impacts

3.4.4. Remedies

3.5. Organization in state budget management – Decentralization in state budget management

3.5.1. Organization in state budget management

3.5.2. Decentralization in state budget management

3.6. Fiscal year and budget process

3.6.1. Fiscal year

3.6.2. Budget process

3.7. Fiscal policy

3.7.1. Definition

3.7.2. Objectives

3.7.3. Instruments

Texts and readings for the chapter:

1. *Chapter 3 “State budget”, Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*
2. *Websites of the Government, banking and financial institutions*
3. *Websites of Ministry of finance, General Department of Taxation, General Department of Vietnam Customs Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 4: CORPORATE FINANCE**

This chapter studies about capital and its roles in enterprises, as well as their sources of capital. It also provides us information about the method of raising capital and how to efficiently manage and utilize it in enterprises.

4.1. General issues on corporate finance

4.1.1. Definition

4.1.2. Roles

4.2. Corporate capital

4.2.1. Owner’s equity

4.2.2. Liabilities

4.3. Current assets management

4.3.1. Current assets definition and classification

4.3.2. Current assets management

4.4. Non-current assets management

4.4.1. Non-current assets definition and classification

4.4.2. Non-current assets management

Texts and readings for the chapter:

*1. Chapter 4 “Corporate finance”*

*Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Chapter1 “ Overview of corporate finance”*

*Chapter 5 “Corporate capital”*

*Chapter 6 “Corporate assets management”*

*Lưu Thị Hương, Vũ Duy Hào, 2013, Corporate finance, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 5: CREDIT AND INTEREST RATE IN THE MARKET ECONOMY**

Credit and interest rate are closely related to each other. Interest rate is the price of credit. Most enterprises in the market economy need credit funding and pay attention to the input cost which is interest rate. Interest rate plays an important role in both macro and micro economic activities. These above issues will be discussed in this chapter.

5.1. Overview of credit

5.1.1. Definition and characteristics of credit

5.1.2. Roles of credit

5.2. Types of credit in the market economy

5.2.1. Bank credit

5.2.2. Commercial credit

5.2.3. Public credit

5.2.4. Finance leasing

5.3. Overview of interest rate

5.3.1. The nature of interest rate

5.3.2. The roles of interest rate

5.3.3. Some types of interest rate in the market

5.4. Some differentiation of interest rate

5.4.1. Real interest rate and nominal interest rate

5.4.2. Simple interest rate and compound interest rate

5.4.3. Interest rate and rate of return

Texts and readings for the chapter:

1. *Chapter 7 “Some basic issues of interest rate”*

*Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market”, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*
2. *Websites of banking and financial institutions*
3. *Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 6: FINANCIAL MARKET**

Financial market is an important component in the national financial system. This chapter studies the functions and roles of financial market to the economic development, as well as its structure, participants and goods transacted in the financial market.

6.1. Overview of financial market

6.1.1. Definition

6.1.2. Function and role of financial market

6.2. Participants of financial market

6.2.1. Borrowers

6.2.2. Lenders

6.3. Structure of financial market

6.3.1. Money and Capital market

6.3.2. Debt and Equity market

6.3.3. Primary and Secondary market

6.3.4. Formal and Informal market

6.3.5. Exchanges and Over-the-Counter market

6.4. Financial market instruments

6.4.1. Money market instruments

6.4.2. Capital market instruments

Texts and readings for the chapter:

*1. Chapter 5 “Financial market”*

*Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

*2. Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market”, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*

*3. Websites of banking and financial institutions*

*4. Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 7: COMMERCIAL BANK**

This chapter researches the foundation and functions of commercial banks and how they conduct such activities as capital mobilization, capital utilization and service supply

7.1. Overview of commercial bank

7.1.1. The foundation of commercial bank

7.1.2. Definition

7.1.3. The functions of commercial bank

7.1.4. Balance sheet of commercial bank

7.2. Activities of commercial bank

7.2.1. Capital mobilization

7.2.2. Capital utilization

7.2.3. Service supply

Texts and readings for the chapter:

1. Chapter 8 “ Commercial bank”

*Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

1. *Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market”, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*
2. The National Assembly of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam (2010), *Law on Credit Institutions 2010,* Hanoi
3. Peter S.Rose (2001), *Commercial bank management*, Finance Publishing House, Hanoi
4. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013), *Commercial banks*, The National Economics University Publishing House, Hanoi
5. David Cox, 1997, “*Modern banking operation*”, National Political Publishing House

*7. Websites of commercial banks*

*8. Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**CHAPTER 8: CENTRAL BANK**

Central bank is a specialized institution of each nation. Having monetary and financial macro management role (through monetary policy), central bank has powerful influence and impacts on every aspect of the economy. This chapter will study some general issues on cetral bank and monetary policy.

8.1. Overview of central bank

8.1.1. Formation

8.1.2. Models of central bank

8.1.3. Functions of central bank

8.2. Central bank and monetary base

8.2.1. The concise balance sheet of cetral bank

8.2.2. Central bank’s process of providing reserve for the commercial banking system

8.3. National monetary policy

8.3.1. Definition

8.3.2. Targets

8.3.3. Tools of national monetary policy

Texts and readings for the chapter:

*1.Chapter 9 « The money supply process »*

*Chapter10 « Central bank and national monetary policy»*

*Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), Monetary and financial theories, The National Economics University Publishing House*

*2. Frederic S.Miskin (2002), “The economics of money, banking and financial market”, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi*

*3. Websites of the Government and central bank*

*4. Specialized magazines in banking and finance*

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Nguyễn Hữu Tài (2012), *“Monetary and financial theories”,* the National Economics University Publishing House.

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

Frederic S.Miskin (2002), *“The economics of money, banking and financial market”*, The Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi

Cao Thị Ý Nhi (2014), *“Monetary and financial theories – questions and exercises”*, The National Economics University Publishing House.

Lê Vinh Danh (1996), *“Money and banking activity”,* The National Political Publishing House

Websites of banking and financial institutions

Specialized magazines in banking and finance

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students eligible for the final exam if:

- Class participation: 75% or higher

- Periodic exam: 5 points or higher (10-point grading scale)

Besides:

- Full participation in all discussions

- Final exam format: multiple choice + essay

- Final score calculation:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Content** | **Mark** | **Weight** | **Total** |
| 1 | Class participation | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Exam (1 test) | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final exam | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final score:** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed)  **Assoc Prof. PhD. Cao Thi Y Nhi** | *Hanoi, 2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof.Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** | |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  ------------------- | | | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  ----------------------------------- | |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Econometrics 1

Code: TOTKT1101 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Mathematical Economics

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Microeconomics, Macroeconomics and Probability and Statistics

4. COURSE DESCRIPTION :

This course provides an introduction to the basic regression analysis. Apart from the preamble, the course consists of 8 chapters covering the following topics: What is a regression model, the main assumptions for a regression model; model estimation and testing; and how to make statistical inferences based on estimated results. The first five chapters are for models with cross-sectional data. Regression models for time series data are presented in the last two chapters. During the course, many practical examples will be introduced for illustrative purpose; and students will learn how to conduct the analysis in Eviews. Knowledge in Mathematics and Statistics will be provided at a relevant level to ensure the scienctific foundation for the course.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

After the course, students can:

* Have solid knowledge about the ideas of regression analysis
* Be able to conduct a complete procedure in regression analysis, from building a relevant model to using it in making conclusions and recommendation
* Have good computer skills in using Eviews software to implement the above analysis

**6. COURSE CONTENT :**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6  Chapter 7 | 8  8  6  4  8  6  5 | 6  6  4  3  6  4  3 | 2  3  2  1  2  2  3 | *Need a projector* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**INTRODUCTION**

This part introduces the content of the course, focusing on: the main objective of regression analysis; methodology and procedure in regression analysis; and types of data in regression analysis.

**CHAPTER 1: SIMPLE REGRESSION MODELS**

This chapter introduce linear models with two variables, indicating the relationship between one dependent variable and one independent variable. The aim of the chapter is to present basic ideas of regression analysis; idea and technique of OLS method as well as assumptions made in the model

1.1. Models and concepts

1.2. The OLS method

1.3 Unbiasness and preciseness of OLS estimators

1.4. The goodness of fit of models

1.5. Some other issues

Readings:

Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 1

2 - Wooldrige, 2009, Introductory econometrics: a modern approach, McGraw-Hill, Chapter 1.

**CHAPTER 2: MULTIVARIATE REGRESSION MODELS**

This chapter introduces multivariate regression models, which is a direct generalization of the models in chapter 1. The contents in chapter 1 will be expressed in a more general form in this chapter. Chapter 2 also introduces different forms of regression models and considers the larger sample size properties of OLS estimators. In the end of the chapter, regression analysis in matrix language is presented.

2.1. Motivations for multivariate models

2.2. Models and the method of OLS

2.3. Some forms of regression models

2.4. The consistency of OLS estimators

2.5. Regression models using matrix

Readings:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 2

2 - Wooldrige, 2009, Introductory econometrics: a modern approach, McGraw-Hill, chapter 1.

3 - Damodar N. Gujarati, 2003, Basic Econometrics, fourth Edition, McGraw-Hill, phụ lục

**CHAPTER 3: STATISTICAL INFERENCE AND FORECATING**

Chapter 3 presents the statistical inferences: using estimated results to make inferences about the population regression coefficients, including confidence intervals and hypothesis testing for the coefficients.

3.1. Distribution of several sample statistics

3.2. Confidence interval for population coefficients

3.3. Hypothesis testings about population coefficients

3.4. Some other testings

3.5. Forecasting the dependent variable and forecast error

Tài liệu tham khảo của chương:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 3

2 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, 2001, Kinh tế lượng, Nhà xuất bản Khoa học Kỹ thuật

**CHAPTER 4: REGRESSION MODEL WITH QUALITATIVE VARIABLES**

In many cases, a variable in economics may depend not only on quantitative factors but also qualitative ones. This chapter will consider models in which impact of qualitative factors on the dependent variable is the focus.

4.1. Dummy variable - concepts

4.2. Model with explanatory variables are dummy

4.3. Model with interactive terms

4.4. When qualitative variable has more than two categories.

Reading materials:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 4

2 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, 2001, Kinh tế lượng, Nhà xuất bản Khoa học Kỹ thuật

**CHAPTER 5: DIAGNOSTICS AND MODEL SELECTION**

OLS estimates are the best and statistical inferences are valid only when assumptions listed in chapter 3 are satisfied. Then what happens if one (or some) of them are not held, and what we do then? Chapter 5 will answer this question.

5.1. Non-zero mean of the error term

5.2. Heteroskedasticity

5.3. Normality of the error term

5.4. Multicollinearity

5.5. The inclusion of irrelevant variables.

Reading materials:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 5

2 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, 2001, Kinh tế lượng, Nhà xuất bản Khoa học Kỹ thuật

**CHAPTER 6: REGRESSION MODELS WITH TIME SERIES**

This chapter presents models with time series data. One important difference between time series data and cross sectional data is that while cross-sectional data are often collected in a random manner, time series are often statistically dependent from one another. This chapter will present the assumptions that ensure the validity of OLS estimates when working with time series data.

6.1. Time series data - concepts

6.2. Regresion model with time series

6.3. Some basic regression models with time series

6.4. OLS’s large sample properties

Reading materials:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 6

2 - Wooldrige, 2009, Introductory econometrics: a modern approach, McGraw-Hill

**CHAPTER 7: AUTOCORRELATION IN REGRESSION MODELS WITH TIME SERIES**

Autocorrelation is what we often have to deal with when working with time series. Chapter 7 will consider its consequences, how to detect and how to cure the problem of autocorrelation

7.1. Consequences of autocorrelation

7.2. How to detect autocorrelation

7.3. How to cure autocorrelation

Reading materials:

1 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, Nguyễn Thị Minh, 2012, Kinh tế lượng, NXB Đại học Kinh tế quốc dân, chương 5

2 - Nguyễn Quang Dong, 2001, Kinh tế lượng, Nhà xuất bản Khoa học Kỹ thuật, Chương 7.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

List required course textbooks. Include detail such as full name of textbook, author, edition, ISBN, description (if desired), and how it can be accessed from (NEU & other) libraries.

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Band score: 10 and 4.0

- In which:

+ Class participation: 10%

+ Midterm test: 30%

+ Final Exam: 60%

- Compulsory: attend at least 80% class- time of the course + take the midterm test

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi, 2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  ----------------------------------- |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

1**. COURSE NAME:** ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

Code: **KTKE1101**  Number of Credit: **3 (2,1)**

2. **DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION**: ACCOUNTING PRINCLIPLES

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

General education courses.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course covers basic knowledge of accounting principles including: the nature of accounting, generally accepted definition and principles of accounting, reflected objects of accounting and accounting methods. Students, thereby, will learn how to recognize the basic business process in accounting.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

This course will equip students with fundamental knowledge of accounting, so they can study effectively other courses in their program.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Chapter | **Time (45 section)** | | |
| ***Total hours*** | ***Theory*** | ***Exams, Discussion*** |
| **Chapter 1:** An overview of Accounting | 8 | 6 | 2 |
| **Chapter 2:** Accounting Cycle | 10 | 6 | 4 |
| **Chapter 3:** Revenues and Expenses | 7 | 5 | 2 |
| **Chapter 4:** Assets | 11 | 7 | 4 |
| **Chapter 5:** Liabilities, earnings and owner’s equities | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |

**CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION TO ACCOUNTING**

This chapter introduces the basic concepts and principles of accounting and the role of accounting in business management. Besides, it introduces Generally Accepted Accounting Principles.

* 1. **The function and the role of accounting**
     1. Definition of accounting
     2. The role of accounting information in making business decision.
     3. Types of accounting
     4. Professional opportunities and development prospects for accountancy
  2. **Objects of accounting and basic accounting equations** 
     1. Objects of accounting
     2. Basic accounting equations
  3. **Financial Statements**
     1. Roles and objectives of Financial Statements
     2. Set of Financial Statements
  4. **Accounting Standards and Professional Accounting Bodies** 
     1. General accounting principles.
     2. Vietnamese accounting standards and international accounting standards
     3. Professional accounting bodies
  5. **Accounting information system**
     1. Definition
     2. Accounting information system and management information system
     3. Accounting Information System for enterprises

Texts and readings for the chapter:

* Lecture notes “Accounting Principles” – Accounting Principle Department
* Vietnamese Accounting standards no 01 – “General standards”
* Other related accounting standards and materials required by lecturers.

**CHAPTER 2: ACCOUNTING CYCLE**

This chapter provides concepts and functions of ledger accounts, accounting documents, and a completed accounting process. Students will learn how to use basic accounting equations to analyze, process and recognize business transactions.

**2.1. Analyzing business transactions using basic accounting equations**

**2.2. Accounts and double-entry bookkeeping system**

2.2.1. Accounts (Ledger accounts)

2.2.2. Double-entry bookkeeping system

2.2.3. The general journal and the general ledger

2.2.4. Influences of economic transactions on financial statements

**2.3. The accounting process**

Texts and readings for the chapter:

* Lecture notes “Accounting Principles”– Accounting Principle Department
* Supplementary materials required by lecturers.

**CHAPTER 3: REVENUES AND EXPENSES**

This chapter introduces definitions, concepts, characteristics, and principles of accounting and two elements comprising an Income Statement: Revenues and Expenses.

**3.1. Revenues**

3.1.1. Definition

3.1.2. Measurement and recognition of revenues

3.1.3. Accounting for revenues

**3.2. Expenses**

3.2.1. Definition of expenses

3.2.2. Measurement and recognition of expenses

3.2.3. Accounting for expenses

Texts and readings for the chapter:

* Lecture notes “Accounting Principles”– Accounting Principle Department
* Supplementary materials required by lecturers.
* Vietnamese Accounting Standards

**CHAPTER 4: ASSETS**

This chapter provides basic knowledge about the assets, including current and non-current assets.

**4.1. Current Assets**

4.1.1. Definition and classification of current assets

4.1.2. Inventory

4.1.3. Cash

4.1.4. Accounts receivable

4.1.5. Other current assets

**4.2. Non-current Assets**

4.2.1. Definition and classification of non-current assets

4.2.2. Accounting for fixed assets

4.2.3. Depreciation of fixed assets

4.2.4. Other non-current assets

Texts and readings for the chapter:

* Lecture notes “Accounting Principles”– Accounting Principle Department
* Supplementary materials required by lecturers.
* Vietnamese Accounting Standards

**CHAPTER 5: LIABILITIES, EARNINGS AND OWNER’S EQUITY**

In chapter 5, students acquire knowledge related to remaining elements of Balance sheet as Liabilities and Owner’s equity. They also learn the process of defining the income, as well as issues related to the processing and distribution of earnings.

**5.1. Liabilities**

5.1.1. Definition and classification of Liabilities

5.1.2. Accounting for Accounts Payable

5.1.3. Accounting for long-term debts.

**5.2. Owners’ Equities and Earnings**

5.2.1. Accounting for earnings

5.2.2. Accounting for owners’ equities

Texts and readings for the chapter:

* Lecture notes “Accounting Principles”– Accounting Principle Department
* Supplementary materials required by lecturers.
* Vietnamese Accounting Standards

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

- Assoc. Prof. Nguyen Thi Dong (2007), Theory of Accounting, Finance Publisher.

- Assoc. Prof. Nguyen Van Cong (2011), Questions and Exercises for “Theory of Accounting”, National Economics University Publisher.

**8. REFERENCES**

- “Accounting Principles” Lectures – Accounting Principle Department

- International Accounting Standards

- Vietnamese Accounting Standards and Vietnamese Accounting policies for enterprises.

- Supplementary materials required by lecturers.

**9. ASSESSMENTS & GRADING POLICY:**

- Grading scale: 10 points

+ Attendance: 10%

+ Midterm test: 20%

+ Final test: 70%

- Students are required to attend the class at least 70% of the total hours of the course and fulfill all the tasks in the exercise book and supplementary materials assigned byinstructors.

- Students are required to be active in reading materials and textbooks for presentations, discussions, and group work in class and attend periodic and final tests.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME:** MathematicalStatistics

Code: TOKT1110 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION**

**Office:** Faculty of Mathematics for Economics  
**Office Hours:** Working hours, the working day  
**Office Telephone:** (84) 04 3628 3007

**3. PRE-REQUISITE**

Probability Theory

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**

This is a basic module for Applied Mathematics subjects in economics. This module provides mathematical methods in statistics.

The course provides students with the theory of random sampling method, estimation and hypothesis testing for the parameters of the probability distribution of the theoretical approach to make decisions.

This module is the basis for the statistical programs expert analysis: multivariate statistical analysis, econometrics and other subjects using statistical tools and mathematical models for the statistics.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**

Students should be able to:

- Understand the theory of sampling, estimation and hypothesis testing; Do research on common statistical models.

- Model economic and social problems in the form of statistical problems.

- Master skills of solving estimations and test the basic hypothesis with the help of an Excel spreadsheet.

- Set simple automatic sheet, use functions and procedures for statistical problems.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4 | 10  14  12  9 | 6  10  8  6 | 4  4  4  2+1 | *Students need to practice on the computer all the exercises* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **29** | **16** |  |

**CHAPTER 1– RANDOM SAMPLES**

This chapter introduces random sampling methods in statistical analysis. Students have to understand:

- The difference between population and random samples

- Statistical concepts, the statistical characteristics of samples and their distribution.

- Methods of describing samples and the difference between the value of a statistical observation and the value reflected by this statistics.

In terms of skills, students are required to:

- Calculate the values of the characteristics observed in the cases statistically different figures

- Use the Microsoft Excel spreadsheets to calculate directly the characteristics; use Excel functions and utilities to describe statistical data for one table.

In addition, students should know the random simulation to better understand the nature of convergence of some important statistics.

1.1. Sampling methods

1.1.1. Random samples

1.1.2. Define

1.1.3. Sampling distribution

1.2. Statistics

1.2.1. Define

1.2.2. Statistics of random samples

1.3. Sample means

1.3.1. Expectation and variance

1.3.2. Sample mean distribution - normal distribution

1.3.3. Sample mean distribution – other distribution and large sample size

1.4. Statistics S02

1.4.1. Expectation and variance

1.4.2. Probability distribution - normal distribution

1.5. MS and sample variance S2

1.5.1. Expectation and variance

1.5.2. Independence and probability distribution – normal distribution

1.6. Descriptive statistics

1.6.1. Frequency and relative frequency

1.6.2. Observed statistics

1.7. The value of sample charecteritics with staticstics softwares

1.8. Multidimensional random samples

1.8.1. Sample description

1.8.2. Sample characteristics of variables

1.8.3. Sample characteristics of relationships

Exercises for chapter 1

Practice:

- Use Excel spreadsheets, formulas, functions

- Calculate the basic statistics

- Simulate random distribution

- Surveying the convergence of the point estimate of the real value

- Set up simple spreadsheet automation.

References of the chapter:

1. Ngo Van Thu, 2010, The Mathematical Statistics, Science and Technology Publisher, Chapter 1.

2. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, and Ngo Van Thu, 2011, Probability Theory and Mathematical statistics, NEU, Chapter 6.

3. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, 2009, Exercise of probability theory and mathematical statistics, NEU.

4. Ngo Van Thu, 2015, Statistics Practicing, NEU, Chapter 2.

5. Ronald J. Thomas H. Wonnacott and Wonnacott, 1990, Introductory statistics for business and economics, Wilay. Chapter 5-6.

6. Dale J. Piorier, 1995, Intermediate Statistics and Econometrics, Prentice - Hall International, Chapter 2-3.

-Allen Webster 7, 1992, Applied Statistics for Business and Economics, Chapter 4-5.

**CHAPTER 2 - PARAMETER ESTIMATION**

This chapter presents theory of parameter estimation, including point estimates and confidence interval estimates.

2.1. Estimation problems

2.2. Point estimate

2.2.1. Decision making theory

2.2.2. Properties of estimators

2.2.3. Maximum likelihood estimators

2.2.4. Posterior maximum likelihood estimators

2.3. Interval estimate

2.3.1. Confidence intervals

2.3.2. Confidence intervals of p in the A(p)

2.3.3. Confidence intervals of µ in the N(µ; σ2)

2.3.4. Confidence intervals of σ2 in the N(µ; σ2)

2.3.5. Microsoft Excel using

Exercises for Chapter 2

References of chapter

1. Ngo Van Thu, 2010, The Mathematical Statistics, Science and Technology Publisher, Chapter 2.

2. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, Ngo Van Thu, 2011, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, NEU, Chapter 7.

3. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, 2009, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics Exercise, NEU.

4. T.W. Anderson, 1984, An introduction to multivariate statistical analysis, Wiley, Chapter 6

5. Ronald J. Thomas H. Wonnacott and Wonnacott, 1990, Introductory statistics for business and economics, Wilay, Chapter 5-6.

**CHAPTER 3 - HYPOTHESIS TESTING**

This chapter introduces the theoretical basis of the construction process to make a hypothesis testing for parameters.

3.1. Basic concepts

3.1.1. Hypothesis testing problems

3.1.2. Loss function

3.1.3. Decision function

3.1.4. Risk function

3.1.5. The action probabilities

3.1.6. The error probabilities

3.1.7. Hypothesis – rejected area

3.1.8. Examples

3.1.9. Lemma Neyman - Pearson

3.2. Parameter hypothesis testing

3.2.1. Testing µ in N(µ; σ2)

3.2.2. Testing p in A(p)

3.2.3. Testing σ2 in N(µ; σ2)

3.2.3. Testing two parameters

3.3. Testing for restrictions

3.3.1. Wald test

3.3.2. Maximum log-likelihood test

3.4. Microsoft Excel using

Exercises for Chapter 3

References of the chapter

1. Ngo Van Thu, 2010, The Mathematical Statistics, Science and Technology Publisher, Chapter 3.

2. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, and Ngo Van Thu, 2011, The curriculum theory of probability and mathematical statistics, NEU, Chapter 8.

3. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, 2009, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics Exercise, NEU.

4. T.W. Anderson, 1984, An introduction to multivariate statistical analysis, Wiley, Chapter 8.

5. Ronald J. Thomas H. Wonnacott and Wonnacott, 1990, Introductory statistics for business and economics, Wilay. Chapter 4.10.

6. Dale J. Piorier, 1995, Intermediate Staistics and Econometrics, Prentice - Hall International. Chapter 6.

7. Allen Webster, 1992, Applied Statistics for Business and Economics, Chapter 9.

**CHAPTER 4 – NON-PARAMETRIC TESTING**

This chapter provides students with a new approach on non-parametric testing, solving some problems which would be used for other subjects such as Econometrics and Multivariate statistics.

4.1. Chi-squared tests

4.1.1. Testing Probability distribution

4.1.2. Testing independence

4.2. Normality testing

4.2.1. Kolmogorov tests

4.2.2. Jacque- Bera tests

4.3. Rank correlation tests

4.3.1. Wilcoxon tests

4.3.2. Spearman rank correlation tests

4.3.3. Mann-Whitney tests

Exercises for Chapter 4

References of the chapter:

1. Ngo Van Thu, 2010, Mathematical Statistics, Science and Technology Publisher, Chapter 3.

2. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, and Ngo Van Thu, 2011, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, NEU, Chapter 9-10.

3. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, 2009, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics Exercise, NEU.

4. T.W. Anderson, 1984, An introduction to multivariate statistical analysis, Wiley. Chapter 11.

5. Dale J. Piorier, 1995, Intermediate Staistics and Econometrics, Prentice - Hall International. Chapter 8.

6. Allen Webster, 1992, Applied Statistics for Business and Economics, Chapter 12-13.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS**

Ngo Van Thu, 2011, Mathematical Statistics (with the aid of Excel spreadsheets). Science and Technology Publisher, Hanoi.

Study data:

- VHLSS data 2002-2004-2006-2008-2010-2012

- Firms data from 2000 to now.

- Data on the stock market from 2000.

**8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS**

1. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, and Ngo Van Thu, 2011, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics, NEU er, Chapter 8.

2. Nguyen Cao Van, Tran Thai Ninh, 2009, Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics Exercise, NEU publisher.

4. Ngo Van Thu, 2015, Statistics Practicing, NEU, Chapter 2.

5. T.W. Anderson, 1984, An introduction to multivariate statistical analysis, Wiley. Chapter 5, 8.

6. Thomas H. Wonnacott and Ronald J. Wonnacott, 1990, Introductory statistics for business and economics, Wilay. Chapter 4.10.

7. Dale J. Piorier, 1995, Intermediate Statistics and Econometrics, Prentice - Hall International. Chapter 6.

8. Allen Webster, 1992, Applied Statistics for Business and Economics, Chapter 12-13.

**9. ASSESSMENT**

- Scale (point) : 10

- Structure of points:

+ Discussion point: 10%

+ The exercise, check out: 30%

+ The final examination period: 60%

- Conditions of the final exam:

+ Must attend at least 80% of the course

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** | |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  ------------------- | | | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  ----------------------------------- | |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** **DEVELOPMENT ECONOMICS**

Code: PTKT1101 Number of Credit: 02

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION**: **Department Of Development Economics**

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Before taking this course, students have to complete MACRO- ECONOMICS 1 course.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Development Economics is the subject in a system of economics, which studies about the principles of economic development in underdeveloped conditions. Development Economics is based on developmental theories in order to find out the principles as well as the basic trends of transition from a low development status to a higher one. The course aims to study the developing countries in general, however the analysis, problem solving, specific applications are applied for the economic development of Vietnam in particular.

Development Economics is used generally for students in Business and Management major (2 credits). The course’s content includes: (i) Classification criteria of worldwide economic system, the socio-economic characteristics of developing countries; (ii) The nature of economic development and sustainable development; (iii) Theoretical and experimental models of economic growth, economic restructuring, and social welfare economic growth, economic restructuring, social welfare

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

***General objectives:***

The course aims to build up the basic principles for economic development of developing countries. In order to achieve the development objectives, the course also proposes development policies in line with the specific characteristics of each country, particular development stages in order to find out the optimal direction for development process of developing countries.

***Specific objectives:***

- Understand the classification criteria of countries in worldwide economic system; the formation and development process characteristics of developing countries; methods and study objectives.

- Clarify the nature, contents of economic development, the importance of studying development issues of developing countries in general and Vietnam in particular.

- Understand the principles of developing economy through specific studies about models of economic growth, economic restructuring and social development process.

- Apply development economic models into developing countries like Vietnam.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No.*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | Chapter 1: Introduction  Chapter 2: Overview of economic development  Chapter 3: Economic Growth  Chapter 4: Economic Restructuring  Chapter 5: Social advancement and economic development | 2  4  10  6  8 | 2  4  8  4  6 | 0  0  2  2  2 |
|  | **Total** | **30** | **24** | **6** |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION**

This chapter aims to give knowledge about the emergence of developing countries, criteria to classify countries basing on the level of development, the distinguish differences between developed and developing countries, how it affects the principles and research methods of Development economics course; similarities and differences of Development economics to Macro and Micro Economics.

* 1. **The categorization of countries on basis of development level**
     1. The appearance of the 3rd World countries
     2. The classification of countries on basis of development level
  2. **The fundamental characteristics of developing countries**
     1. The differences between developing countries
     2. The common characteristics of developing countries
  3. **The necessity of choosing the way of development**
  4. **Objects, contents and research methodology**
     1. Research objects
     2. Research contents
     3. Research methodology

***Texts and readings for the chapter:***

1. Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011). ..***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University Publishing House. Introduction chapter (pp. 8-21).
2. Todaro. MD. (1998). **.**..***Economics for the 3rd World***. Education Publishing House: (Chapter 1. pp. 13 - 23). (Chapter 4. pp. 117 - 138).
3. Perkins. DH.. Radelet. S. and Lindauer. DL. (2006)..***Development Economics***. Statistics Publishing House: Chapter 1 (pp. 3 - 35).

**CHAPTER 2: OVERVIEW OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT**

***Brief introduction about the chapter:***

This chapter introduces the general issues including: the concept, the components, the role of each aspect in the economic development; the relationship between aspects of economic development; the process of choosing development model of developing countries. Also in chapter 2, the Rostow's Stages of Economic Growth model and UNDP’s Millennium Development Goals (now is Sustainable Development Goals) will also be introduced to orient the development process of developing countries. Finally, the chapter will identify clearly the role of market and government in the process of implementing the economic development strategy of developing countries.

* 1. **The nature and content of economic development**

2.1.1. The natural of economic development

2.1.2. The contents of economic development

* 1. **The stages of economic development**

2.2.1. Traditional society

2.2.2. Preconditions for take-off

2.2.3. Take-off

2.2.4. Drive to maturity

2.2.5. Age of High mass consumption

* 1. **Choosing development approach on basis of economic growth and development**

2.3.1. Growth priority approach

2.3.2. Equality priority approach

2.3.3. Comprehensive economic development approach

***Texts and readings for the chapter:***

1. Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011), ***Giáo trình Kinh tế phát triển***, NXB ĐH KTQD: chương 1 (tr 27 – 44) [***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University Publishing House Chapter 1 (pp. 27 - 44)].
2. Perkins, DH., Radelet, S. and Lindauer, DL. (2006),***Kinh tế học phát triển***, NXB Thống kê (sách dịch): chương 1 (tr. 3 đến 35) [***Development Economics***, Statistics Publishing House: Chapter 1 (pp. 3 - 35)]
3. Todaro, MD. (1998), ***Kinh tế học cho thế giới thứ ba*,** NXB Giáo dục: (chương 2, tr. 27 - 72) [***Economics for the 3rd World***, Education Publishing House: Chapter 2 (pp. 27 - 72)]

**CHAPTER 3: ECONOMIC GROWTH**

This chapter will focus on the aspects of economic growth. First is the introduction of measures of growth, identification of the factors affecting growths. Subsequently, the chapter introduces a number of specific growth models. The final one is the introduction of economic growth picture of Vietnam in recent years and the future orientations.

* 1. **Measures and factors affecting economic growth**
     1. Measurement of economic growth
     2. Factors affecting economic growth
  2. **Economic growth model of Ricardo**
     1. Basics of the model
     2. Contents of the model
     3. Application of the model to draw up development policy
  3. **Economic growth model of Harrod - Domar**
     1. Basics of the model
     2. Contents of the model
     3. Application of the model to draw up development policy
  4. **Economic growth model of Solow**
     1. Basics of the model
     2. Contents of the model
     3. Application of the model to draw up development policy
  5. **Endogenous economic growth model** 
     1. Basics of the model
     2. Contents of the model
     3. Application of the model to draw up development policy

***Texts and readings for the chapter:***

1. Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011). .***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University Publishing House Chapter 3 (pp. 72 - 130).
2. Perkins. DH.. Radelet. S. and Lindauer. DL. (2006)..***Development Economics***. Statistics Publishing House: Chapter 4 (pp. 127 - 166).
3. Todaro. MD. (1998). **.*Economics for the 3rd World***. Education Publishing House: Chapter 5 (pp. 139 - 181).
4. .General Statistics Office of Vietnam (2001 - Present). ***Annual Statistics of Vietnam***.

**CHAPTER 4: ECONOMIC RESTRUCTURING**

This chapter refers to the aspects of economic structure. Then, it focuses on the sectoral economic structure which includes the issues of economic restructuring trends in the development process; introduction of methodologies to implement the process of economic restructuring associated with the development of well-known theoretical models. Basing on that, the chapter will provide application suggestions for developing countries especially the case of Vietnam.

* 1. **Types of economic structure**
     1. Sectoral economic structure
     2. Regional economic structure (rural – urban)
     3. Ownership economic structure
     4. Institutional sector structure
  2. **Changing in Sectoral economic structure in economic development**
     1. Concepts and contents
     2. Tendencies of changes in sectoral economic structure in economic development
  3. **Theoretical model of changing in sectoral economic structure** 
     1. Dual-sector model of Arthur Lewis
     2. Neoclassical dual-sector model
     3. Dual-sector model of Harry T. Oshima (Strategic Processes in Monsoon Asia's Economic Development)

***Texts and readings for the chapter:***

1. Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011). .***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University Publishing House Chapter 4 (pp. 157 - 178).
2. Todaro. MD. (1998). **.*Economics for the 3rd World***. Education Publishing House: Chapter 4 (pp. pp. 118 - 127).
3. .General Statistics Office of Vietnam (2001 - Present). ***Annual Statistics of Vietnam.***
4. andDocuments of the Eleventh Party Congress: Current status and direction of economic restructuring in Vietnam.

**CHAPTER 5: SOCIAL ADVANCEMENT AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT**

This chapter provides the fundamental methodological aspects to assess the advancement of society for human in each country. This includes: (i) issues of improving human development level, and ways that the social advancement affects the human development; (ii) poverty and economic development; (iii) inequality in economic development. Based on that, the chapter will provide application suggestions for developing countries especially the case of Vietnam.

* 1. **Economic growth and human living standard improvement**
     1. Economic growth – Necessary condition for human living standard improvement
     2. Income distribution – Sufficient condition for human living standard improvement
  2. **Human development and economic development**
     1. Points of view about human development
     2. Human development index (HDI)
  3. **Inequality and economic development**
     1. Measures of inequality in income distribution
     2. Models of inequality in income distribution and economic growth
     3. Inequality in income distribution between countries and in each country
     4. Gender inequality
  4. **Poverty in developing countries**
     1. Income Poverty
     2. Multidimensional Poverty

***Texts and readings for the chapter:***

1. Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011). .***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University Publishing House: Chapter 5 (pp. 201 - 272).
2. Perkins. DH.. Radelet. S. and Lindauer. DL. (2006)..***Development Economics***. Statistics Publishing House: Chapter 6 (pp. 233 - 291).
3. Todaro. MD. (1998). **.**.***Economics for the 3rd World***. Education Publishing House: Chapter 6 (pp. 183 - 224); chapter 7 (pp 238 – 247.
4. .World Bank (2006). *World Development report 2006*.
5. Annual Millennium Program Implementation Report.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Ngô Thắng Lợi . (2011). .***Text book on*** ***Development Economics***; National Economics University. ISBN: 978 – 604 – 927 – 111 - 3.

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

- Perkins. DH.. Radelet. S. and Lindauer. DL. (2006)..***Development Economics***. Statistics Publishing House.

- Todaro. MD. (1998). **.*Economics for the 3rd World***. Education Publishing House.

- Nafziger. EW. (1998). Economic development

- World Bank.Vietnam Development Report (annually)

- World Bank. World Development Report (annually)

- Millennium Program Implementation Report

- General Statistics Office of Vietnam (2001 - Present). *Annual Statistics of Vietnam*

*-* Documents of the Eleventh Party Congress. Documents of the Twelfth Party Congress

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Test, exercise, and group discussion: Students must take 01 mid-term test. Besides, students are encouraged to take part in several in-class exercises and group discussions.

- Condition to take part in the final exam: Students are allowed to take part in the final exam session after completing all lecturing sessions, mid-term test and group assignment.

- Method of final exam: Written examination, exam duration does not excess 90 minutes

- Grading scheme: maximum of 10

Assessment plan

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| * Lecturing attendance and attitude | 10% |
| * Mid-term test | 20% |
| * Final exam | 70% |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM |
| **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** INTERNATIONAL ECONOMICS I

Code: TMKQ1102 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

International Economics

**Office:** Building A1, NEU

**Office Hours:** Monday – Friday (8am – 5pm)  
**Office Telephone:** \*Phone Number

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Microeconomics, Macroeconomics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course investigates the importance of international economics; learns about the process of development and major characteristics of the world economy as well as the content and feature of international economics relations; analyzes the factor movements of goods and services among nations and other regions in the world economy; investigates international trade policies in order to adjust the policy’s impacts and other factor movements of the policy on welfare.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

This course provides international trade knowledge and the skills to analyze the trends of world economy as well as the impacts of international economics integration on nations and enterprises; finally, it explains the foundation and benefits of international trade as well as the implications for policy. As the result, students learn the management of international trade of nations in the context of globalization.

**6. COURSE CONTENT:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***Details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4 | 10  12  11  12 | 7  8  7  8 | 3  4  4  4 | *List of special requirements for delivering the course (if any)* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

The entire content of course consists of four chapters with brief outline of each chapter as follows:

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION TO INTERNATIONAL ECONOMICS AND THE WORLD ECONOMY**

**Brief introduction about the chapter**

This chapter introduces the concept of international economics which includes the importance of international economics, contents and research methodologies of international economics. Next, this chapter states the foundation of the world economy such as the definition, framework, process and development, the significant trends of the world economy. Based on the knowledge provided, student could anticipate the changes of the world economy and the changes in policies to effectively apply to the future of world economy. Finally, this chapter investigates the global issues impacting the mobility of world economy; the content and feature of international economics relations; the foundation and development of international economic relations.

* 1. **Introduction to international economics** 
     1. The importance of international economics
     2. The content of international economics
     3. The research methodology of international economics
     4. The structure of subject
  2. **The foundation and development of the world economy** 
     1. Definition and framework of the world economy
     2. The mobility and development of the world economy
     3. The context of world economy
  3. **The trends in the mobility of world economy and the anticipation of world economy** 
     1. The trends in the mobility of world economy
     2. The anticipation of world economy
  4. **The global issues**
     1. The fundamental foundation of the global issues
     2. The generic of the global issues
     3. The meaning of the global issues
  5. The content and features of international economics relations
     1. Definition and content
     2. Features of international economics relations
     3. The foundation and development of international economics relations

**Texts and readings for the chapter**

1. Dominick Salvatore (2015), International Economics, 12 Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
2. Paul R.Krugman & Maurice Obstfeld (2014), *International Economics: Theory and Policy*, 10 Edition, Pearson Addison Wesley
3. Thomas A. Pugel (2015), *International Economics*, 16 Edition, McGraw-Hill International Edition

**CHAPTER II: THEORY OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE**

**Brief introduction about the chapter**

International trade is the exchange of goods and services across international borders and territories. Although international trade appeared thousand years ago, its concept was firstly introduced via an attempt to explain based on science evidences in the 15th century. The objective of this chapter is to investigate the theories that explain the foundation, structures and gains from international trade. Chapter 2 opens with the standard theory of international trade such as Mercantilists; absolute advantage and comparative advantage theory. Next, the chapter investigates the most important theory of comparative advantage which is the Heckscher - Ohlin theory and new trade theory. The last section of the chapter mentions some recent theories of international trade since the mid-20th century.

**2.1 The classical theory of international trade**

2.1.1 Mercantilistism

2.1.2 Theory of absolute advantage

2.1.3 Theory of comparative advantage

2.1.4 The assessment of the classical theories

2.1.5 The theory of comparative advantage: in case of constant opportunity cost

**2.2** **The Extend of the standard theory of international trade**

2.2.1 The comparative advantage in the aspect of currency

2.2.2 The standard theory of international trade

**2.3 The modern theory of international economics**

2.3.1 Assumptions of the theory

2.3.2 Factor intensity, factor abundance

2.3.3 The Heckscher-Ohlin theory

2.3.4 The other clause of Heckscher-Ohlin theory

2.3.5 The assessment of the theory

**2.4 New trade theory of international trade**

2.4.1 Economies of scale and international trade

2.4.2 Trade based on dynamic technological differences

2.4.3 International trade theory related to demand

2.4.4 National competitive advantage theory

2.4.5 The assessment of new trade theory of international trade

**Texts and readings for the chapter**

1. Dominick Salvatore (2015), International Economics, 12 Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
2. Paul R.Krugman & Maurice Obstfeld (2014), International Economics: Theory and Policy, 10 Edition, Pearson Addison Wesley
3. Thomas A. Pugel (2015), International Economics, 16 Edition, McGraw-Hill International Edition

**CHAPTER III: INTERNATIONAL TRADE POLICY**

**Brief introduction about the chapter**

Chapter 3 investigates international trade policy in terms of its measurement system as well as the tools it applies to the market. Students will learn that trade liberalization and trade protectionism are two trends that are not contradicting each other, but instead mutually dependent on each other. Based on the bilateral and multilateral agreements, each nation would use the appropriate actions in their international economic relations.

Lastly, the chapter discusses the basic trends, relations, and basic principles of international trade policy, which are applied to adjust international trade relations as well as the typical international trade policies and requirements for nations when they join the World Trade Organization (WTO).

**3.1 Definition and the role of international trade policy**

3.1.1 Definition and the function of international trade policy

3.1.2 The role of international trade policy

**3.2 The tools and measures of international trade policy**

3.2.1 The generic of tariff and the tools of international trade policy

3.2.2 Import tariff and the impacts

3.2.3 General Equilibrium Analysis of tariff in small nations

**3.3 The main trends in international trade policy**

3.3.1 Trade liberalization

3.3.2 Trade protectionism

3.3.3 The reciprocal relation between two trends

3.3.4 The fundamental principle to adjust the international trade relation

**3.4 The forms of the typical international trade policy**

3.4.1 Initial Inward oriented trade policy

3.4.2 Initial Outward oriented trade policy

3.4.3 Following inward oriented trade policy

3.4.4 Following outward oriented trade policy

3.4.5 The international trade policy of developing nations

**3.5 Multilateral trade negotiation and the adjustment of international trade policy**

3.5.1 The foundation of multilateral negotiation

3.5.2 WTO and the adjustment of international trade policy of nations

**Texts and readings for the chapter**

1. Dominick Salvatore (2015), International Economics, 12 Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
2. Paul R.Krugman & Maurice Obstfeld (2014), *International Economics: Theory and Policy*, 10 Edition, Pearson Addison Wesley
3. Thomas A. Pugel (2015), *International Economics*, 16 Edition, McGraw-Hill International Edition

**CHAPTER IV - INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC INTEGRATION**

**Brief introduction about the chapter**

This chapter introduces international economic integration in theoretical and practical aspects. Firstly, this chapter defines international economic integration as the process in which nations enhance effective and mutual cooperating relationships. Secondly, the scope of economic integration covers preferential trade arrangements, free trade areas, customs unions, common markets, and economic unions. Thirdly, the chapter discusses the impacts of international economic integrations on international trade relations and other aspects. Forth, it generalizes the positive and negative effects of international economic integration on every nation and the world economy as a whole. Lastly, this chapter briefly introduces some typical forms of regional integration at present such as the ASEAN, EU, NAFTA and WTO.

**4.1 Definition and the degree of economic integration**

4.1.1 Definition of economic integration

4.1.2 The degree of economic integration

**4.2 Impacts of economic integration**

4.2.1 Positive effects

4.2.2 Negative effects

**4.3 Typical Examples of economic integration**

4.3.1 Association of Southeast Asian Nations

4.3.2 European Union EU

**Texts and readings for the chapter**

1. Dominick Salvatore (2015), International Economics, 12 Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
2. Paul R.Krugman & Maurice Obstfeld (2014), *International Economics: Theory and Policy*, 10 Edition, Pearson Addison Wesley
3. Thomas A. Pugel (2015), *International Economics*, 16 Edition, McGraw-Hill International Edition

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS:**

TS Đỗ Đức Bình & PGS.TS Ngô Thị Tuyết Mai đồng chủ biên (2013), *Giáo trình kinh tế quốc tế*, NXB Đại học Kinh Tế Quốc dân

**8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS:**

1. Dominick Salvatore (2015), International Economics, 12 Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
2. Paul R.Krugman & Maurice Obstfeld (2014), *International Economics: Theory and Policy*, 10 Edition, Pearson Addison Wesley
3. Thomas A. Pugel (2015), *International Economics*, 16 Edition, McGraw-Hill International Edition

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students will attend the final exam if they meet the above requirements :

+ Class attendance at least 60% of the whole period

+ Attend the mid-term exam

The structure of grading:

+ Lecturer’s assessment: 10%

+ Mid-term exam: 20%

+ Final exam: 70%

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence-Freedom-Happiness** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME: Calculus 3**

Code: TOCB 1104 Number of Credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION**

**Department of fundamental mathematics**

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University, 207 Giai Phong road, Hanoi, Vietnam

**Office Hours:** 8am-5pm, from Monday to Friday

**Office Telephone:** 084 4 36283007, ext: 5944 or 5798

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Calculus 2 (TOCB1103)

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**

The course includes basic programs about real function and functional analysis. The module provides knowledge on: Metric spaces, Normed linear space, Measure theory, Lebesgue integrals and Stieltjes integrals. This is the advanced calculus to build mathematical foundation for students majoring in Mathematical Economics and Mathematical finance and it is also a useful tool for students to access, analyze, study models in economics by means of complex mathematics in the future.

The module content is divided into five chapters. Chapter 1 outlines the real numbers set theory and algebraic sets; Chapter 2 presents the metric space; Chapter 3 introduces knowledge about measure theory; Chapter 4 presents the basic knowledge on Lebesgue integrals and Stieltjes integrals and last chapter presents the normed linear space.

**5. LEARNING OUTCOMES**

On successful completion of this course students will be able to:

\* To gain confidence with mathematics

\* To develop analytical skills

\* To develop organizational skills

\* To develop both independent learning and group work skills

\* To develop verbal and non-verbal communication skills

\* To successfully use mathematics in economics and business applications

**6. COURSE OBJECTIVES**

TOPICS TO BE COVERED

* Sets theory
* Metric spaces
* Measure theory
* Lebesgue integrals and Stieljes integrals
* Normed linear spaces

**7. COURSE CONTENT AND LECTURE PLAN**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1. Set Theory | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 2 | Chapter 2. Metric Spaces | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3. Measure Theory | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4. Lebesgue and Stieljes Integrals | 12 | 8 | 4 |
| 5 | Chapter 5. Normed Linear Spaces | 6 | 4 | 2 |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |

**CHAPTER 1: SET THEORY**

**1.1. Sets**

1.1.1. Notions

1.1.2. Operations of sets

**1.2. Real numbers**

1.2.1. Axioms of real numbers

1.2.2. Basic properties of real numbers

**1.3. Algebras and - Algebras**

1.3.1. Notions and example of Algebra

1.3.2. Notions and example of Algebra

**References of chapter 1: Chapters A-B [1], Chapter 1 [2], Chapter 1 [3], Chapter 1 [4], Chapter 1 [5], Chapter 1 [11]**

**CHAPTER 2: METRIC SPACES**

**2.1. Notions**

2.1.1. Definitions of metric space and examples

2.1.2. Convergent sequences

**2.2. Open and closed sets**

2.2.1. Open set

2.2.2. Closed set

2.2.3. Separable metric space

**2.3. Completeness and compactness**

2.3.1. Completeness

2.3.2. Compactness

**2.4. Continuity**

2.2.1. Definitions and examples of continuous functions

2.2.2. Continuous functions on compact sets

**References of chapter 2: Chapter C [1], Chapters 1, 2 [2], Chapters 2, 3 [3], Chapter 5 [4], Chapter 2 [5], Chapter 1 [11], Chapter 1 [6]**

**CHAPTER 3: MEASURE THEORY**

**3.1. Measure**

3.1.1. Notions

3.1.2. Properties of measure

**3.2. Extension Theorem**

3.2.1. Outer-measure

3.2.2. Extension Theorem

**3.3. Lebesgue measure on **

3.3.1. Lebesgue measure on

3.3.2. Lebesgue measure on

3.3.1. Lebesgue-Stieltjes measure

**3.4. Measurable functions**

3.4.1. Notions

3.4.2. Structure of measurable functions

3.4.3. Equivalent functions and convergence on measure

**References of chapter 3: Chapter 7 [3], Chapter 3 [4], Chapter 3 [5], Chapter B [10], Chapter 12 [6].**

**CHAPTER 4: LEBESGUE AND STIELTJES INTEGRALS**

**4.1. Lebesgue Integrals of nonnegative and simple functions**

4.1.1. Notions

4.1.1. Properties

**4.2. Lebesgue Integrals of measurable functions**

4.2.1. Lebesgue Integrals of nonnegative and measurable functions

4.2.2. Lebesgue Integrals of measurable functions

4.2.3. Properties of Lebesgue Integrals

4.2.4. Limit theorems

**4.3. Lebesgue Integrals on**

**4.4. Stieltjes Integral**

4.3.1. Notions

4.3.2. Relations between Lebesgue, Stieltjes and Riemann Integrals

**Midterm Exam**

**References of chapter 4: Chapter 5 [2], Chapter 8 [3], Chapter 4 [4], Chapter 4 [5], Chapters C-D [10], Chapters 3, 4, 5, 6 [11], Chpater 2 [7].**

**CHAPTER 5: NORMED LINEAR SPACES**

**5.1. Normed linear spaces**

5.1.1. Vector spaces

5.1.2. Normed Linear Spaces

5.1.3. Examples of Normed Linear Spaces

**5.2. Spaces of integrable p*th* powers of functions**

5.2.1. Holder and Minkowski’s inequalities

5.2.2. Spaces

**5.3. Linear operators**

5.3.1. Notions and examples

5.3.2. Continuous linear operators

5.3.3. Space of operators, and linear functional

**References of chapter 5: Chapter 5 [2], Chapter 4 [3], Chapter 5 [4], Chapter 5 [5], Chapters 5-6 [6], Chapter 1 [7].**

**Final Examination**

**8. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

[1] Requred: EFA A.OK (2005), *Real analysis with economic applications,* New York University.

**9. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

[2] PHẠM KỲ ANH, TRẦN ĐỨC LONG (2001), *Textbook Real function and functional Analysis*, HaNoi National University Publisher.

[3] A. N. CÔNMÔGÔRÔP, X. V. FÔMIN (1971), *Cơ sở lý thuyết hàm và giải tích hàm*, tập 1, 2, NXB Giáo dục.

[4] HOÀNG TỤY (2003), *Real function and functional Analysis*, HaNoi National University Publisher.

[5] DUDLEY R. M. (2002), *Real Analysis and Probability*, Cambrige University press.

[6] JOHN K. HUNTER, BRUNO NACHTERGAELE, *Applied analysis*, World Scientific.

[7] HERMANN FLASCHKA, *Principles of Analysis*, University of Arizona.

[8] EFA A.OK (2005), *Probability with economic applications,* New York University.

[9] RICHARD F. BASS, *Real analysis,* University of Connecticut.

[10] MAREK CAPINSKI - EKKEHARD KOPP, *Measure Integral and Probability*, Springer-Verlag.

[11] CARTER M., VAN-BRUNT B. (2000), *The Lebesgue-Stieltjes integral-a practical introduction*, Springer.

**10. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

Your course score will be determined as the following weighted average:

| **Item** | **Weight** |
| --- | --- |
| Attendance | 10% |
| Midterm | 20% |
| Final Exam | 70% |
| **Total** | 100% |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Grading Criteria: %** | | **Letter Grade** | |
| 96%-100% | A+ | | 4,0 |
| 91%-95% | A | | 4,0 |
| 85%-90% | A- | | 3,7 |
| 81% - 84% | B+ | | 3,3 |
| 7,6%-80% | B | | 3,0 |
| 71%-75% | B- | | 2,7 |
| 66%-70% | C+ | | 2,3 |
| 61%-65% | C | | 2,0 |
| 55%-60% | C- | | 1,7 |
| 51%-54% | D+ | | 1,3 |
| 46%-50% | D | | 1,0 |
| 40%-45% | D- | | 0,7 |
| <39% | F/WU/IC | | 0,0 |

**\* Attendence policy:**

Attendance is required. You are responsible for everything that happens in the class. If you miss a class, ask your friends about materials covered in the class. The parts of the course are very well related to each other. It is a requirement that a student need to attend at least 80% time of course to have the right to take the final exam.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

1. **COURSE NAME:** Microeconomics 2

Code: KHMI1102 Number of Credits: 03

1. **DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

*Department of Microeconomics*

**Office:** Room 3.3, Buiding No. 10  
**Office Hours:** 8:00-16:30, Monday-Friday  
**Office Telephone:** 0436283571

1. **PRE-REQUISITE:** Before taking this course, students have to complete the following courses:

Microeconomics 1, Mathematics and English.

1. **COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Microeconomics 2 is designed to ensure scientific, modern and inter-sectoral knowledges, not duplicating Microeconomics 1. The structure of the course is built on the foundation of Microeconomics 1, the content, nevertheless, is updated with the theories and tools for economic analysis. This course focuses on the topics of consumption choice theory, long-run production and cost theory, imperfect competition markets....Specifically, the course will include the quantitative analysis at certain levels in order to support the economic and policy analysis.

1. **COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

After finishing the module, the students will understand the advanced knowledge of microeconomics and have ability to apply the microeconomics theory in explaining the practical economic issues.

1. **COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | **Chapter 1: Microeconomic models and Optimization methods** | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 2 | **Chapter 2: Consumer’s theory** | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
| 3 | **Chapter 3: Decision making under risk** | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 4 | **Chapter 4: Producer’s theory** | 7 | 4 | 3 |  |
| 5 | **Chapter 5: Perfect competition and monopoly** | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
| 6 | **Chapter 6: Imperfect competition** | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
| 7 | **Chapter 7: Markets of production factors** | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 8 | **Chapter 8: The role of government in the economy** | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

CHAPTER 1: Microeconomic models and Optimization MethodS

This chapter presents basic research methods in economics. The chapter will introduce a number of ways to describe basic economic relationships in the economic models. This chapter also introduces some techniques to solve the optimization problems in economics.

***Contents:***

**1.1. Economic Models**

1.1.1. The theoretical models

1.1.2. The common features of the economic models

1.1.3. Marshall’s Supply - Demand Model

1.1.4. General Equilibrium Model

1.1.5. The recent developments of economic models

**1.2. The Methods of solving optimization problems**

1.2.1. Profit maximization using Total Revenues and Total Cost approach

1.2.2. Optimization using marginal approach

1.2.3. Optimization using algebraic approach

***References:***

1. National Economics University. *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*. 2012 . NEU Publisher: Chapter V: pp. 179-206.
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ). *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô III*. 2010. NEU Publisher. Chapter III: pp. 77-112.
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ). *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*. 2010. LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER. Chapter III.

## CHAPTER 2: CONSUMER’S THEORY

This chapter presents some models of consumer behavior (Ordinal Utility Theory and Revealed Preference Theory). Basing on the analysis of constraints, preference and utility, the demand function for goods and services would be derived.

***Contents:***

**2.1. Ordinal Utility Theory (Budget Line and Indifference Curve analysis)**

2.1.1. Assumptions

2.1.2. Indifference Curve and Indifference Curve maps

2.1.3. Budget Line

2.1.4. Optimal choice of consumers

2.1.5. Income and Substitution Effects

2.1.6. Deriving demand curve form Ordinal Utility Theory

**2.2. Revealed Preference Theory**

2.2.1. Assumptions

2.2.2. Deriving demand curve from Revealed Preference Theory

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter VI; pp.pp. 140 - 177
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher, Chapter II: pp. 52 - 76
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER: Chapter II

### CHAPTER 3: DECISION MAKING UNDER RISK

Consumption and investment decision in fact may be made under condition of risk or uncertainty. This chapter will examine descriptions of risks and the attitudes toward risk, the methods of decision-making under risk, the method to reduce risks, and the application of risk analysis to select the portfolio.

***Contents:***

**3.1. The basics**

3.1.1. Risk and Uncertainty

3.1.2. Risk description

**3.2. Decision making under risk**

3.2.1. Using Expected Values

3.2.2. Using Expected Utility

3.2.3. Using Variance

3.2.4. Using Coefficient of Variation

3.2.5. Decision Tree

**3.3. Risk reduction methods**

3.3.1. Diversification

3.3.2. Insurance

3.3.3. Gathering more information

**3.4. Risky Asset Demand**

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter V: pp. 179-206
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher, Chapter III: pp. 77-112
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER, Chapter III

### CHAPTER 4: PRODUCTION THEORY

This chapter introduces theory of production and cost in the long run. Some main contents of this chapter include long run production functions, returns to scale, optimal input combination, long run costs, economies of scale.

***Contents:***

**4.1. Long run Production**

4.1.1. Production functions

4.1.2. Insoquant curve

4.1.3. Returns to scale

**4.2. Optimal input combination and long run costs**

4.2.1. Isocost and Optimal input combination in the long run

4.2.2. Expansion path and long run Total Cost curve

4.2.3. Long run Average and Marginal Costs

**4.3. Economies of Scale and Estimation Methods**

4.3.1. Economies of Scale and Diseconomies of Scale

4.3.2. Estimation of Economies of Scale

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter VI; pp. 221-229; pp. 240-269
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher: Chapter IV: pp. 113 - 159
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER: Chapter IV

### CHAPTER 5: PERFECT COMPETITION AND MONOPOLY

This chapter supplements the perfect competition and monopoly studied in Microeconomics 1. The main content of the chapter is about the long-run equilibrium in the perfect competition market and the price discrimination in the monopoly market.

***Contents:***

***5.1.* Perfect Competition**

5.1.1. Long run equilibrium of Perfectly Competitive Firms

5.1.2. Long run industrial supply curve of Perfectly Competion Market

**5.2. Monopoly**

5.2.1. Price Discrimination

5.2.2. Monopsony

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter VII; pp. 298 – 307; Chapter VIII; pp. 340 – 350.
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher: Chapter V, pp. 160 - 203
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER: Chapter V

## CHAPTER 6: IMPERFECT COMPETITION

This chapter introduces two imperfect competition market structures including monopolistic competition and oligopoly. The chapter introduces the game theory which is a basic model to analyze the strategic behavior of oligopoly firms. The chapter then presents in detail some models of oligopoly such as Collusive Oligopoly Models and Non-collusive Oligopoly Models.

***Contents*:**

**6.1. Monopolistic Competition**

6.1.1. Basic characteristics

6.1.2. Equilibrium in the short-run and long-run

6.1.3. Comparing monopolistic competition with perfect competition and monopoly

**6.2. Oligopoly**

6.2.1. Basic characteristics

6.2.2. Game theory

6.2.3. Collusive Oligopoly Models

6.2.4. Non-collusive Oligopoly Models

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter IX; pp. 359 – 371; Chapter X; pp. 379 – 406.
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher: Chapter VI: pp. 204 - 238
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER: Chapter VI

## CHAPTER 7: MARKET FOR FACTORS OF PRODUCTION

This chapter studies the markets of production factors such as labor, capital, land, in which, difference from the market of goods and services, firms are buyers and households are sellers. This chapter examines supply and demand factors in detail, analyzes the interaction between supply and demand factor to determine the price of production inputs.

***Contents:***

**7.1. Principles of deciding production factors**

**7.2. The labor market**

7.2.1. Labor demand – short-run and long-run

7.2.2. Labor supply - Substitution Effect, Income Effect and the shape of individual labor supply curve

7.2.3. Imperfect labor market equilibrium

**7.3. The capital market**

7.3.1. Rate of return and Present Value

7.3.2. Capital demand and supply

7.3.3. Capital market equilibrium

**7.4. The land market**

7.4.1. Land demand and supply

7.4.2. Land market equilibrium

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter XI; pp. 411 – 449.
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher, Chapter VII: pp. 240 - 280
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER, Chapter VII

# CHAPTER 8: The roleS of government in the Market

This chapter investigates the roles of the Government in the market. The chapter presents the importance of the Government in the market, the causes of the Government interventions and ways the Government interventions into the market.

***Contents:***

8.1. **The roles of the Government in the market**

8.1.1 The importance of the Government in the market

8.1.2. Viewpoints of the Government roles

8.1.3. Economic functionality of the Government

**8.2. The Causes of the Government’s intervention**

8.2.1. Externalities

8.2.2. Public good

8.2.3. Imperfect competition

8.2.4. Inequality

**8.3. Government intervention**

8.3.1. Fixing externalities

8.3.2. Providing public goods

8.3.3. Regulation of natural monopoly

8.3.4. Ensuring equality

***References:***

1. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher: Chapter XIII; pp. 495 – 530.
2. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher, Chapter VIII: pp. 281 – 320.
3. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Hướng dẫn thực hành Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, LABOUR-SOCIETY PUBLISHER, Chapter VIII.
4. **REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS:**
5. National Economics University, *Giáo trình Kinh tế học*, 2012 , NEU Publisher.
6. Micro-economics Department (NEU ), *Giáo trình Kinh tế vi mô II*, 2010, NEU Publisher.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings:**

1. David Begg*.* Stanley Fischer*.* Rudiger Doorbusch*.* *Econonmics.* Third Edition*.* 1991*.* McGraw Hill

2. Michael Parkin*.* *Microeconmics* – Fourth Edition*.* 1990*.* Addison-Wesley

3. Robert S. Pindyck*.* DanielL. Rubinfeld*.* *Microeconomics.* Second Edition*.* 1992*.* Macmillan

4. Paul A.Samuelson&William D.Nordhaus*.* *Economics.* Forteenth Edition*.* McGran Hill*.* 1992

5. Bradley R.Schiller*.* *The Microeconomy today.* Fourth Edition*.* Randan House*.* 1989

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

The student’s results basing on the final examination (70%), the mid-term test (20%) and class participation (10%).

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Macroeconomics 2

Code: KHMA1102 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Macroeconomics

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm, from Mondays to Fridays  
**Office Telephone:** 04 3628 3570/5147

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Students studying this course had to pass the Macroeconomics 1course.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course is designed to introduce different approaches to explain how the economy works and the challenges of policies that aim at stabilizing the economy in the short run and promoting growth in the long run. It also introduces some micro-based macroeconomic analyses in an attempt to better understand economic behaviors such as consumption, investment and money demand. Besides, this course provides students with some quantitative tools for facilitating macroeconomic policy analysis.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

By the end of the course, students are expected to:

* understand sources of growth and be able to explain the difference in standard of living across nations as well as the role of growth-promoting policies in the long run;
* understand basic economic behavior such as consumption, investment and demand for money;
* understand and be able to analyze causes of short run economic fluctuations;
* understand and be able to analyze the impacts of macroeconomic policies in the economy and the determinants of policy effectiveness;
* be able to apply theories to explain macroeconomic issues and policies applied by the government.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6  Chapter 7 | 8  6  8  10  5  4  4 | 5  4  5  6  4  3  3 | 3  2  3  4  1  1  1 | *Lecture room with microphone and projector* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: THE IS – LM FRAMEWORK AND FISCAL AND MONETARY POLICY IN A CLOSED ECONOMY**

This chapter introduces the IS – LM model and its application to analyzing the effects of fiscal and monetary policies on aggregate demand in a closed economy.

**1.1. The IS-LM model**

1.1.1. The equilibrium of goods market and the IS curve

1.1.2. The equilibrium of money market and the LM curve

1.1.3. Output and interest rates in equilibrium

**1.2. The effects of fiscal policy**

1.2.1. The multiplier and crowding out

1.2.2. The determinants of fiscal policy effectiveness

**1.3. The effects of monetary policy**

1.3.1. Monetary transmission mechanism

1.3.2. The determinants of monetary policy effectiveness

**1.4. Policy coordination**

**1.5. The IS–LM model and the AD–AS model**

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter21
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House.
* Begg, D., S. Fisher, R. Dornbusch (2007), Kinh tế học, Nxb Thống kê, Chương 24
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, Chapter 11.

**CHAPTER 2: THE MUNDELL-FLEMING MODEL AND MACROECONOMIC POLICIES IN AN OPEN ECONOMY**

### This chapter presents the Mundell-Fleming model and its application to analyzing the effects of fiscal and monetary policies on aggregate demand in an open economy under perfect and imperfect mobility of capital.

**2.1. Introduction of Mundell-Fleming model**

* + 1. The equilibrium of goods market and the IS curve
    2. The equilibrium of money market and the LM curve
    3. Balance of payments and the BP curve
    4. General equilibrium

**2.2. Macroeconomic policies under floating exchange rate regime**

2.2.1. Fiscal policy

* + 1. Monetary policy

**2.3. Macroeconomic policies under fixed exchange rate regime**

2.3.1. Fiscal policy

2.3.2. Monetary policy

2.3.3. Currency devaluation: Opportunities and challenges

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 28
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House. Chapter 16
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, Chapter 12.

**CHAPTER 3: THEORIES OF AGGREGATE SUPPLY**

This chapter introduces different theories of aggregate supply and the debate on stabilization policies.

**3.1. Classical economics**

**3.2. Keynesian economics**

**3.3. New classical economics**

**3.4. New Keynesian economics**

**3.5. The trade-off between inflation and unemployment**

3.5.1. Introduction of the Phillips curve

3.5.2. Expectations and the trade-off between inflation and unemployment

3.5.3. Inflation and inflation control in Viet Nam

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 18, 22 & 23
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House, Chapter 5, 12
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, Chapters 13 & 14.
* Froyen, R.T., Macroeconomics: Theories and Policies, Maxwell Macmillan International, 8th edition, Chapters 9 & 11

**CHAPTER 4: ECONOMIC GROWTH**

This chapter presents exogenous and endogenous growth theories in order to explain sources of economic growth in the long run.

**5.1. The Solow growth model**

5.1.1. Capital accumulation

5.1.2. Population growth

5.1.3. Technological progress

**5.2. Endogenous growth models**

5.2.1. Externalities from investment

5.2.2. Externalities from production

##### 5.3. Sources of economic growth and growth-promoting policies in Viet Nam

**5.4. Estimating sources of economic growth**

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 15
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House, chapter 19 & 20.
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, chapters 7 & 8.

**CHAPTER 5: MONEYTARY DEMAND**

This chapter discusses the behaviour of consumption.

**5.1. The consumption function by J. Maynard Keynes**

**5.2. The inter-temporal choice by Irving Fisher**

**5.3. The life-cycle hypothesis by Franco Modigliani**

**5.4. The permanent income hypothesis by Milton Friedman**

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 24
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House, chapter 8
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, chapters 16.

**CHAPTER 6: INVESTMENT**

This chapter presents different theories explaining three components of investment including business fixed investment, residential investment and inventory.

**6.1. The classical theory of business fixed investment**

6.1.1. The capital rental market

6.1.2. The determinants of investment

**6.2. The accelerator theory of inventories**

**6.3. Residential investment**

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 25
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House, chapter 9
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, chapters 17.

**CHAPTER 7: DEMAND FOR MONEY**

This chapter discusses the determinants of demand for money based on different approaches: The liquidity preference theory, the porfolio theory and the transactions theory.

**7.1. The liquidity preference theory by J. M. Keynes**

**7.2. The porfolio theory**

**7.3. The transactions theory: The Baumol-Tobin model**

Texts and readings:

* Economics Textbook (volume II), National Economics University Publishing House, Chapter 26
* Nguyễn Văn Công và Nguyễn Việt Hưng (2011), *Kinh tế vĩ mô: Lý thuyết và chính sách*, Lao động Publishing House, chapter 10
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers, chapters 18.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

### Economics, Volumn II, National Economics University, 2012

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

* Nguyễn Văn Công and Nguyễn Việt Hưng, *Macroeconomics: Theory and Policies*, Lao động Publishing House, 2011
* Mankiw, N. Gregory (2003), *Macroeconomics*, 5th edition, Worth Publishers.
* Blanchard, Olivier, (2009) Macroeconomics, 5th edition, Pearson International Edition

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Course assessment will be based on a midterm test/presentation (30%) and a final exam (70%).

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Financial Economics 1

Code: KHMA3301 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** MACROECONOMICS DEPARTMENT

**Office:** 8th Floor, Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Mathematical Economics, Microeconomics 1, 2; Macroeconomics 1, 2

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

The overarching aim of the course is to enable students to understand the interface between economics and finance. To this end the course aims:

* To familiarize students with the role of uncertainty and risk in economics and finance.
* To enable students to understand the economic role of (different types of) assets.
* To introduce students to the fundamental concepts of asset markets (short selling, arbitrage, equilibrium, optimality, completeness of asset markets).

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

On completion of this unit successful students will be able to:

1.     Have clear understanding of the economic principles underlying finance.

2.     Demonstrate an understanding of the role of asset markets as means of risk diversification.

3.     Demonstrate an understanding of the foundations and limitations of asset pricing techniques.

4.     Solve numerically typical problems related to asset pricing and risk management.

5.     Perform rigorous analysis of asset markets and portfolio decisions.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: Investment decisions under certainty | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Uncertainty and risk | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3: Private insurance with asymmetric information | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Derivative securities | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Corporate finance | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 6 | Chapter 6: Project evaluation and the social discount rate | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
|  | Total | 45 | 27 | 18 |  |

**Chapter 1: Investment decisions under certainty**

**1.1 Intertemporal consumption in autarky**

1.1.1 Endowments without storage

1.1.2 Endowments with storage

1.1.3 Other private investment opportunities

**1.2 Intertemporal consumption in a market economy**

1.2.1 Endowments with atemporal trade

1.2.2 Endowments with atemporal trade and fiat money

1.2.3 Endowments with full trade

1.2.4 Asset economy with private investment opportunities

1.2.5 Asset economy with investment by firms

1.2.6 Asset economy with investment by firms and fiat money

**1.3 Asset prices and inflation**

1.3.1 The Fisher effect

1.3.2 Wealth effects in the money market

**1.4 Valuing financial assets**

1.4.1 Term structure of interest rates

1.4.2 Fundamental equation of yield

1.4.3 Convenient pricing models

1.4.4 Compound interest

1.4.5 Bond prices

1.4.6 Share prices

1.4.7 Price–earnings ratios

1.4.8 Firm valuations and the cost of capital

*Texts and readings:*

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**Chapter 2:** **Uncertainty and risk**

**2.1 State-preference theory**

2.1.1 The (finite) state space

2.1.2 Debreu economy with contingent claims

2.1.3 Arrow–Debreu asset economy

**2.2 Consumer preferences**

2.2.1 Von Neumann–Morgenstern expected utility

2.2.2 Measuring risk aversion

2.2.3 Mean–variance preferences

2.2.4 Martingale prices

**2.3 Asset pricing in a two-period setting**

2.3.1 Asset prices with expected utility

2.3.2 The mutuality principle

2.3.3 Asset prices with mean–variance preferences

**2.4 Term structure of interest rates**

*Texts and readings:*

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**Chapter 3: Private insurance with asymmetric information**

**3.1 Insurance with common information**

3.1.1 No administrative costs

3.1.2 Trading costs

**3.2 Insurance with asymmetric information**

3.2.1 Moral hazard

3.2.2 Adverse selection

*Texts and readings:*

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**Chapter 4: Corporate finance**

**4.1 How firms finance investment**

**4.2 Capital structure choice**

4.2.1 Certainty with no taxes

4.2.2 Uncertainty with common information and no taxes

4.2.3 Corporate and personal taxes, leverage-related costs and the Miller equilibrium

4.2.4 The user cost of capital

**4.3 Dividend policy**

4.3.1 Dividend policy irrelevance

4.3.2 The dividend puzzle

4.3.3 Dividend imputation

*Texts and readings:*

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**Chapter 5: Project evaluation and the social discount rate**

**5.1 Project evaluation**

5.1.1 A conventional welfare equation

5.1.2 Optimal provision of public goods

5.1.3 Changes in real income (efficiency effects)

5.1.4 The role of income effects

**5.2 The social discount rate**

5.2.1 Weighted average formula

5.2.2 Multiple time periods and capital depreciation

5.2.3 Market frictions and risk

*Texts and readings:*

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Jones, Chris. Financial Economics, Routledge NewYork, NY 2008.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

1. H. H. Panjer (Editor), Financial Economics, The Actuarial Foundation of the USA, 1998.

2. D. Luenberger, Investment Science, Oxford University Press, 1998.

3. S. R. Pliska, Introduction to Mathematical Finance: Discrete Time Models, Blackwell Publ., 1997.

4. H. Follmer and A. Schied, Stochastic Finance: An Introduction in Discrete Time, Walter de Gruyter, 2002.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of class time

- Final exam: essay questions and exercises

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Financial Economics 2

Code: KHMA3302 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** MACROECONOMICS DEPARTMENT

**Office:** 8th Floor, Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Mathematical Economics, Microeconomics 1, 2; Macroeconomics 1, 2; Financial Economics 1

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course is designed to provide both a self-contained study of the principles of financial economics, and a bridge to higher level courses in economics and finance. It includes an overview of quantitative methods in finance, considers risk aversion in the context of utility theory, examines portfolio theory, the Capital Asset Pricing Model and multi-factor asset pricing models, covers bond pricing, duration and convexity, behavioural finance theory, an introduction to the economics of financial crises, and introduces the top down approach to investment decisions. The emphasis is on a thorough coverage of modern finance theory as applied to investment analysis, balanced with a consideration of new developments in the discipline, and of the application of both old and new theoretical perspectives to understand the current environment for financial investment decisions.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

On successful completion of this course, students will be able to:

1. Have clear understanding of the economic principles underlying finance.
2. Demonstrate an understanding of the role of asset markets as means of risk diversification.
3. Demonstrate an understanding of the foundations and limitations of asset pricing techniques.
4. Apply utility theory to describe and analyse investment decisions under risk aversion.
5. Describe, apply and criticize single and multiple factor models of risk and return.
6. Describe, apply, compare and criticize the efficient markets hypothesis and behavioural finance theory.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: Investments: Background and issues | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Risk and return: past and prologue | 8 | 4 | 4 |
| 3 | Chapter 3: Efficient diversification | 8 | 4 | 4 |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Capital asset pricing and arbitrage pricing theory | 10 | 8 | 2 |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Portfolio performance evaluation | 8 | 4 | 2 |
|  | Total | 40 | 28 | 12 |

**CHAPTER 1: INVESTMENTS: BACKGROUND AND ISSIUES**

This chapter introduces basic concepts of investment environment and how markets and securities have evolved to meet the changing and complex needs of different participants in the financial system. This chapter will give a good foundation to understand the basic types of securities and financial market as well as how trading in those markets is conducted.

**1.1. Real assets versus financial assets**

**1.2. Types of financial assets**

**1.3. The roles of financial markets in the economy**

1.3.1 Capital allocation

1.3.2 Consumption timing

1.3.3 Allocation of risk

1.3.4 Separation of ownership and management

**1.4 The investment process**

**1.5 The main participants**

**1.6 Financial intermediaries**

Texts and readings: Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill, chapter 1.

**CHAPTER 2: RISK AND RETURN**

This chapter provides the tools needed to interpret the history of rates of return and the lessons that history offers for how investors might go about constructing portfolios using safe as well as risky assets.

**2.1. Rate of return**

2.1.1. Measuring investment returns over multiple periods

2.1.2. Conventions for quoting rates of return

**2.2. Risk and risk premiums**

2.2.1. Scenario analysis and probability distributions

2.2.2. The normal distribution

2.2.3. Deviation from normality and value at risk

2.2.4. Using time series of return

2.2.5. Risk premiums and risk aversion

2.2.6. The Sharpe (reward-to-volatility) measure

**2.3 The historical record**

Local, regional and global risky stock portfolio

**2.4 Inflation and real rates of return**

The equilibrium nominal rate of interest

**2.5 Asset allocation across risky and risk-free portfolio**

2.5.1. The risky asset

2.5.2. The risk-free asset

2.5.3. Portfolio expected return and risk

2.5.4. The capital allocation line

2.5.5. Risk tolerance and asset allocation

**2.6 Passive strategies and the capital market line**

2.6.1. Historical evidence on the capital market line

2.6.2. Costs and benefits of passive investing

Texts and readings: Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill, chapter 5.

**CHAPTER 3: EFICIENT DIVERSIFICATION**

This chapter constructs modern portfolio theory, which involves the construction of the risky portfolio. It aims to accomplish efficient diversification across asset classes like bonds and shares and across individual securities within these asset classes.

**3.1. Diversification and portfolio risk**

**3.2. Asset allocation with two risky assets**

3.2.1. Covariance and correlation

3.2.2. The three rules of two-risky-assets portfolios

3.2.3. The risk-return trade-off with two-risky-assets portfolios

3.2.4. The mean-variance criterion

**3.3 The optimal risky portfolio with a risk-free asset**

**3.4 Efficient diversification with many risky assets**

3.4.1. The efficient frontier of risky assets

3.4.2. Choosing the optimal risky portfolio

3.4.3. The preferred complete portfolio and the separation property

3.4.4. Constructing the optimal risky portfolio: an illustration

**3.5 A single-index asset market**

3.5.1. Statistical and graphical representation of the single-index model

3.5.2. Diversification in a single-index security market

3.5.3. Using security analysis with the index model

**3.6 Risk of long-term investments**

3.6.1. Are share returns less risky in the long run?

3.6.2. The fly in the time diversification ointment

Texts and readings: Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill, chapter 6.

**CHAPTER 4: CAPITAL ASSET PRICING AND ARBITRAGE PRICING THEORY**

This chapter introduces the capital asset pricing model (CAPM), arbitrage pricing theory (APT), as well as index and multi-index models, the mainstays of applied financial economics. These models link property measured risk with the return investors can reasonably expect on various securities.

**4.1. The capital asset pricing model**

4.1.1. Why all investors would hold the market portfolio

4.1.2. The passive strategy is efficient

4.1.3. The risk premium of the market portfolio

4.1.4. Expected returns on individual securities

4.1.5. The security market line

4.1.6. Application of the CAPM

**4.2. The CAPM and index models**

4.2.1. The index model, realized returns and the expected return-beta relationship

4.2.2. Predicting betas

**4.3. The CAPM and the real word**

**4.4. Multifactor models and the CAPM**

4.4.1. The Fama-French three-factor model

4.4.2. Factor models with macroeconomics variables

4.4.3. Multifactor models and the validity of the CAPM

**4.5. Factor models and the arbitrage pricing theory**

4.5.1. Well-diversified portfolios and arbitrage pricing theory

4.5.2. The APT and the CAPM

4.5.3. Multifactor generalization of the APT and CAPM

Texts and readings:

1. Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill, chapter 7.
2. Reilly Brown, *Investment Analysis & Portfolio Management, 10th Edition,* South Western, chapter 8.

**CHAPTER 5: PORTFOLIO PERFORMANCE EVALUATION**

**5.1. Risk-adjusted returns**

5.1.1. Investment clients, service providers and objectives of performance evaluation

5.1.2. Comparison groups

5.1.3. Basic performance-evaluation statistics

5.1.4. Performance evaluation

5.1.5. The relation of alpha to performance measures

**5.2. Style analysis**

5.2.1. Morningstar’s risk-adjusted rating

5.2.2. Risk adjustments with changing portfolio composition

5.2.3. Risk-adjusted performance of fund managers

**5.3. Performance attribution procedures**

5.3.1. Asset allocation decisions

5.3.2 Sector and security selection decisions

**5.4. Market timing: measurement of market timing performance**

Texts and readings:Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill, chapter 8.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Zvi Bodie, Michael E. Drew, Anup Basu, Alex Kane and Alan J. Marcus, *Principles of Investments*, ISBN: 9780071012386, McGraw-Hill.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

Reilly Brown, *Investment Analysis & Portfolio Management, 10th Edition,* South Western.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of class time

- Final exam: essay questions and exercises

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Behavioral Finance and Economics I

Code: KHMI3301 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5 pm week days

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Intermediate Microeconomics, Principles of Macroeconomics, Mathematical Economics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course will examine some basic assumptions about human behavior common in economics (people are purely self-interested; can do statistics really well; have preferences only over final outcomes; exponentially discount the future; have well-defined and stable preferences, and more). It will investigate how these assumptions came to be, their benefits and shortcomings, and how understanding psychology can lead to better assumptions, and more realistic economic models. The course is not a fundamentally different way of doing economics. Like all economics, it is trying to understand the driving force of various economic behaviors. Unlike economics, it will spend a great amount of time looking at lab experiments to find whether observed behavior is consistent with the assumptions being used. In the course, we will examine evidence from psychology and elsewhere, and strive to incorporate a richer, more realistic set of assumptions into our models.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

As a result of completing this course, students will be able to:

* Understand the predictive value of traditional economic theories, yet also identify where traditional theories of the rational, fully-informed economic agent fail to adequately explain the behavior of individuals and groups;
* Evaluate the merits of alternative private-market mechanisms and public policies, given the responses of individuals to price signals vs. other non-market “cues”/“nudges”;
* Seek out opportunities and design methodological strategies for research that better and further utilizes “big data” and interactive formats to understand more about what drives individual- and family-level decisions;
* Write and present/speak effectively on these topics, recognizing different audiences.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | An introduction to behavioral economics | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 2 | Simple heuristics for complex choices | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 3 | Choice with risk | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 4 | Choosing when to act | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 5 | Learning from new information | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 6 | Interacting with others | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 7 | Midterm | 2 | 0 | 2 |
| 8 | Social preferences | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 9 | Evolution and culture | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 10 | Neuroeconomics | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 11 | Happiness and utility | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 12 | Policy and behavior | 3 | 2 | 1 |
|  | Total | 40 | 27 | 13 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: An introduction to behavioral economics**

1. **The history and controversies of behavioral economics**
2. **Some background on behavioral economics methods**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 1,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 2: Simple heuristics for complex choices**

1. **Utility and search**
2. **Mental accounting and framing**
3. **The role of emotions**
4. **Demand, supply and markets**
5. **The behavioral life cycle hypothesis**
6. **Saving for the future**
7. **The housing market**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 2,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 3: Choice with risk**

1. **Expected utility**
2. **Independent and fanning out**
3. **Reference dependence and prospect theory**
4. **Preference reversals**
5. **Financial trading**
6. **Insurance**
7. **Tax evasion**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 3,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 4: Choosing when to act**

1. **Exponential discounting**
2. **Hyperbolic discounting**
3. **Loss aversion and sequences**
4. **Time and risk**
5. **Borrowing and saving**
6. **Exploiting time inconsistency**
7. **Environmental economics**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 4,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 5: Learning from new information**

1. **Bayesian updating and choice with uncertainty**
2. **Two cognitive biases**
3. **Learning from others**
4. **Health care**
5. **Bubble and bust**
6. **Voting in elections**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 5,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 6: Interacting with others**

1. **The beauty contest**
2. **Playing for the first time**
3. **Learning from experience**
4. **Teams make decisions**
5. **Auctions**
6. **Learning to coordinate**
7. **Monetary policy by committee**
8. **Industrial organization**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 6,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 7: Social preferences**

1. **The experimental evidence for social preferences**
2. **Inequality aversion**
3. **Intentions and social norms**
4. **Giving to charity**
5. **Price and wage rigidity**
6. **Contract theory**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 7,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 8: Evolution and culture**

1. **Evolution and economic behavior**
2. **Culture and multi-level selection**
3. **The gender gap**
4. **The economics of family**
5. **Developments economics**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 8,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 9: Neuroeconomics**

1. **An introduction to the brain**
2. **Valuing rewards and learning**
3. **Making decisions**
4. **Addiction**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 9,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 10: Happiness and utility**

1. **What makes us happy?**
2. **Do we know what makes us happy?**
3. **Choice and commitment**
4. **Health and happiness**
5. **Saving and retirement**
6. **Welfare and trade-offs**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 7,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 11: Policy and behavior**

1. **Designing good institutions**
2. **Nudge and behavior change**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, Chapter 11,2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Texts and readings:

Cartwright Edward (2018). Behavioral Economics, 2nd edition, Routledge Publishing House.

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of class time

- Final exam: essay questions and exercises

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Behavioral Finance and Economics II

Code: KHMI3302 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

**Office:** Room 808 , Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:**

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Behavioral Finance and Economics I

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Over the past several decades, the field of finance has developed a successful paradigm based on the notions that investors and managers were generally rational and the prices of securities were generally “efficient.” However, recent theoretical and empirical research has shown this paradigm to be insufficient to describe various features of actual financial markets. In this course we will use insights from behavioral economics and psychology as well as other social sciences and more realistic economic settings to guide and develop alternative theories of financial market behavior, while relying on the analytical and quantitative methods common to finance. We will examine how the insights of behavioral finance complement the traditional paradigm and shed light on investors' trading patterns, the often anomalous behavior of asset prices, and various Wall Street institutions and practices impacting both firms and individual consumers.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

After the course student will know:

− Bounded rationality concept;

− main assumptions and ideas of prospect theory;

− theoretical and empirical foundations and challenges to the efficient market hypothesis;

− key behavioral biases of individual and professional investors;

− key anomalies in the markets proving the behavioral biases;

− key behavioral biases of top managers.

After the course student will be able to:

- compare expected utility theory with the prospect theory;

- explain and demonstrate using empirical data the challenges to the efficient market hypothesis;

- explain the nature and forecast the consequences of key behavioral biases of investors;

- Describe the process of behavioral biases contribution to the asset prices models;

- Describe how behavioral biases of managers affect the decision-making process in a corporation.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Behavioral finance: introduction | 5 | 3 | 2 |  |
| 2 | Efficient market hypothesis | 10 | 6 | 4 |
| 3 | Failing EMH. Evidence of motivating phenomena | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 4 | Behavioral economics and finance: prospect theory and asset pricing | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 5 | Heuristics and behavioral biases of investors | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 6 | Behavioral corporate finance | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 7 | Demonstrating behavioral biases in action: Empirical evidence from emerging markets | 5 | 3 | 2 |
|  | Total | 40 | 24 | 16 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: Behavioral finance: introduction**

1. **Psychology and market people.**
2. **Investors, portfolio managers, analysts: are they rational?**
3. **Bounded rationality in real market conditions.**
4. **Decision-making process and behavioral biases.**
5. **Simple experiments on anchoring**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates, Part 1.

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 2: Efficient market hypothesis**

1. **Theoretical foundations of efficient market hypothesis (EMH).**
2. **3 steps of efficient market hypothesis.**
3. **Rational investors.**
4. **Irrational investors: number and the correlation of trading strategies.**
5. **The case with correlated trading strategies: arbitrage & close substitutes.**
6. **The future of irrational investors.**
7. **Empirical tests of efficient market hypothesis.**
8. **Testing quick and correct price reactions to the news. Testing no reaction of asset prices to no news.**
9. **The value of stale information.**
10. **3 forms of EMH.**
11. **First glance proofs of insider trade.**
12. **Making money on insiders’ information (Seyhun, 1998).**
13. **How to test the semi-strong form of EMH?**
14. **Event-study as one of the key tests of price reaction to news.**
15. **Price trends and reversals according to semi-strong form of EMH.**
16. **Testing the absence of significant reaction to non-news (Scholes, 1972).**
17. **Price reaction to block sales.**
18. **Substitution effect**.

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates, Chapter 1

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 3: Failing EMH. Evidence of motivating phenomena**

1. **Theoretical challenges to the EMH.**
2. **Empirical challenges to EMH.**
3. **Insider information and corporate scandals.**
4. **Return predictability in the stock markets.**
5. **Seasonal anomalies.**
6. **January effect.**
7. **Common risk factors in the returns on stocks and bonds (Fama and French, 1993).**
8. **Stock prices overreaction and correction (De Bondt et al., 1985; Stein, 1989).**
9. **Orange juice and weather by Roll (1984).**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates, Chapter 2

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 4: Behavioral economics and finance: prospect theory and asset pricing**

1. **Prospect theory (Kahneman, Tversky).**
2. **Bounded rationality.**
3. **Expected Utility theory vs. prospect theory.**
4. **Probability weighing function: π(p) instead of p.**
5. **What does the introduction of the weighing functionmean?**
6. **The weight of small probabilities.**
7. **Lotteries as an example of overweighedprobability.**
8. **The weight of large probabilities.**
9. **Parametrization of utility function.**
10. **Risktaking behavior.**
11. **Endowment effect: experiments. Sentiment and asset pricing.**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates, Chapter 9 +18+19

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 5: Heuristics and behavioral biases of investors.**

1. **The most popular bias in day-to-day discussion: Anchoring bias.Limited attention, storing and retrieving information, availability bias.**
2. **Familiarity bias (Health &Tversky, 1991).**
3. **Risk preference, framing bias.**
4. **Mental accounting (Tversky&Kahnemann, 1992).**
5. **Representativeness (Tversky&Kahnemann, 1974).**
6. **Ambiguity aversion (Ellsberg, 1961).**
7. **Overconfidence and excessive trading (Griffin &Tversky, 1992).**
8. **The analysis of potential consequences.**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates, Chapter 10

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 6: Behavioral corporate finance.**

1. **The decision-making process in reality.**
2. **First level: rational managers.**
3. **Managerial financing and investment decisions as rational responses to securities market mispricing.**
4. **Second level: less than rational managers.**
5. **Behavioral biases of managers.**
6. **Capital structure choice: behavioral aspects.**
7. **Investment policy: real investments and M&A deals.**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates.

Montier James (2008) Behavioral Finance – Insights into Irrational Minds and Markets.

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 7: Demonstrating behavioral biases in action: Empirical evidence from emerging markets.**

Texts and readings:

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Texts and readings:

Burton E. và Shah S. (2013) Behavioral Finance – Understanding the Social, Cognitive, and Economic Debates.

Shleifer, Andrei (2000). Inefficient Markets: An Introduction to Behavioral Finance. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

### 8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS AND OTHER READINGS

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of class time

- Final exam: essay questions and exercises

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME:** Foundation of Mathematical Finance

Code: TOTC1106 Number of Credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

*Department Mathematical Finance*

**Office:** Faculty of Economic Mathematics   
**Office Hours:** Working hours, the working day  
**Office Telephone:** (84) 04 3628 3007

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Course pre-requisites: Probability Theory, Computer Skills and Microeconomics 1; Macroeconomics 1

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Foundation of mathematical finance is an optional subject for second-year students majoring in Mathematical Finance.

The subject studies basic knowledge to calculate variation in the price (of the contract, assets,..) in the financial market based on stochastic analysis. Content of this subject consists of 5 chapters. Chapter 1 introduces basic financial calculations in the deterministic environment by Excel tool. The next chapters study modeling the financial assets process in a stochastic environment. Chapter 2 introduces the stochastic process in finance with discrete time. Chapter 3 introduces the stochastic process in finance with continuous time. Stochastic calculation, stochastic defferential equation (SDE) and simulation of stochastic processes are introduced in Chapter 4 and Chapter 5.

This course provides the basic knowledge of Mathematical Finance and Stochastic analysis to support students in specialized subjects.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

* The subject provides students with: Basic Financial Calculation, Stochastic calculation in finance, simulation of stochastic processes to study financial markets.
* The subject provides learners with skills of deterministic calculation and stochastic calculation in finance, skills in using the softwares: Matlab, Excel... to calculate basic finance, simulation programming of stochastic processes in finance.

**6. COURSE CONTENT:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5 | 10  8  8  9  10 | 6  6  6  6  6 | 4  2  2  3  4 | *Practice with computer software and report in group.* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**CHAPTER 1- BASIC FINANCIAL CALCULATION**

This chapter introduces some concepts of the structure of financial market and basic calculation of the common financial transactions. Some contents: discounted cash flow method, cost of investment capital, financial analysis of the financial lease contract, internal rate of return (IRR),... are presented in details and practiced on Excel:

**1.1. Introduction**

**1.2. Present value (PV) and Net present value (NPV)**

**1.3. Internal rate of return**

**1.4. Future value and application**

**1.5. Salary**

**1.6. Compound interest**

**1.7. Operation of stock exchanges**

References:

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
3. Y. K. Kwok (1998), *Mathematical Models of Financial Derivatives*, Springer Finance.

**CHAPTER 2- STOCHASTIC MODEL IN FINANCE WITH DISCRETE TIME**

This chapter presents the basic concepts of financial markets in the form of stochastic models. For simplicity, in this chapter we consider the stochastic process with discrete time and illustrated by the binominal model. Moreover, this chapter also introduces some financial derivatives such as: Americal option, European option and some pricing methods with discrete time. The detailed contents of this chapter include:

**2.1. Binomial model**

**2.2. Discrete-time stochastic process**

2.2.1. Conception

2.2.2. Conditional Expectation

2.2.3. Discrete-time Martingale

2.2.4. Markov process

**2.3. Stopping times and American options**

**2.4. Radon – Nikodym Theorem**

References:

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
3. Y. K. Kwok (1998), *Mathematical Models of Financial Derivatives*, Springer Finance.

**CHAPTER 3- STOCHASTIC MODEL IN FINANCE WITH CONTINUOUS TIME**

This chapter introduces the semi-continuous models, some concepts of stochastic process with continuous time and especially the Brownian motion which is used more in the finance and different fields. The detailed contents of this chapter include:

**3.1. Semi-continuous model**

3.1.1. Discrete-time Brownian motion

3.1.2. Discrete-time market model

3.1.3. Brownian motion as a Limit of random walks

**3.2. Continuous - time stochastic process**

* + 1. Conception
    2. Adapting process with a filtration
    3. Conditional expectation
    4. Continuous - time Martingale
    5. Markov and Stopping times

**3.3. Brownian Motion**

* + 1. Conception
    2. Property

**3.4. Stochastic process simulation**

References:

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
3. Y. K. Kwok (1998), *Mathematical Models of Financial Derivatives*, Springer Finance.

**CHAPTER 4- STOCHASTIC INTEGRAL AND APPLICATION**

This chapter studies the fundamentals of stochastic calculations: Itô integral, Itô formula, Stratonovich integal,… We approach from reality problems of finance for the construction of stochastic calculations. The detailed contents of this chapter include:

**4.1. Itô integral**

* + 1. Process has first variation, quadratic variation
    2. Definition of the Itô integral
    3. Properties of the Itô integral
    4. Connection with financial models

**4.2. Itô formula**

* + 1. Itô difference
    2. One-dimensional Itô formula
    3. Multi-dimensional Itô formula
    4. Connection with financial model

**4.3. Stratonovich integal**

4.3.1. Definition of the Stratonovich integral

4.3.2. Relationship between the Itô integral and the Stratonovich integral

References:

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
3. Bernt Oksendal (2000), *Stochastic Differential Equations, An Introduction with Applications*, Fifth Edition, Springer.
4. P. E. Kloeden and E. Platen (1995), *Numerical Solution of Stochastic Differential Equations*, Springer.
5. Steven Shreve (1997), *Stochastic calculate and finance*, Lecture.

**CHAPTER 5- STOCHASTIC DIFFERENTIAL EQUATION AND APPLICATION**

This chapter introduces stochastic defferential equation which is a common tool for building financial models with continuous time. In addition, we study methods for solving a class of the SDE. Moreover, this chapter also introduces some numerical methods to solve the SDE and simulation for some financial models. The detailed contents of this chapter include:

**5.1. Stochastic defferential equation**

* + 1. Conception
    2. Existence and uniqueness of solution

**5.2. Some SDEs have explicit solution**

* + 1. Linear SDE
    2. Some nonlinear SDEs moves to the linear SDE
    3. Some SDEs moves to the Stratonovich SDE

**5.3. Markov property and some financial models**

* + 1. Markov property
    2. Black-Scholes Model
    3. Interest rate model

**5.4. Simulation for some financial models**

References:

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
3. Bernt Oksendal (2000), *Stochastic Differential Equations, An Introduction with Applications*, Fifth Edition, Springer.
4. P. E. Kloeden and E. Platen (1995), *Numerical Solution of Stochastic Differential Equations*, Springer.

Steven Shreve (1997), *Stochastic calculate and finance*, Lecture.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS**

1. Trần Trọng Nguyên (2010), *Foundation of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Steven Shreve (1997), *Stochastic calculate and finance*, Lecture.

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

1. Trần Hùng Thao (2004), *Introduction* *of mathematical finance*, Science and Technics Publishing House.
2. Bernt Oksendal (2000), *Stochastic Differential Equations, An Introduction with Applications*, Fifth Edition, Springer.
3. P. E. Kloeden and E. Platen (1995), *Numerical Solution of Stochastic Differential Equations*, Springer.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

* Attendance (min 80%): 10%
* Discussion and homework: Complete teacher’s requirement
* Practice and presentation: 30%
* Final exam: 60%

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT**  (signed) | *Hanoi,2019*  **PRESIDENT**  (signed)  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  ----------------------------------- |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

# 1. MODULE PROFILE

**1. COURSE NAME:** Financial Data Analysis

Code: KHMA3303 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** MACROECONOMICS DEPARTMENT

**Office:** 8th Floor, Building A1, NEU Campus

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Mathematics for Economics and Finance

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This module develops some quantitative techniques that underpin research and business analysis. It promotes a critical awareness and understanding of some of the processes, techniques and technology by which numerical information can be collected and analysed.

In addition to ensuring that students are competent in relevant numerical techniques, it anticipates the requirements of later modules, such as independent study, that entail analysis of numerical information using statistical tests.

Student are engaged in the data acquisition, preparation, and presentation of results in a group project. This is focused on businesses quoted on stock exchanges. Each group member follows a company. They could assess the market structure of their company using a Herfindahl index. They could analyse products/services from their company (e.g. mentioning price, cross and income elasticity where appropriate – linked to Contemporary Business Analysis). They could review share price movements and contextualised them using material in the Financial Times, Bloomberg, CNBC, Guardian etc plus the BBC News website.

The share’s performance could be related to a portfolio, constructed using an index, or FTSE100 over a period of their choosing. These processes could entail regression and correlation analysis. Thus, the data analysis comprises considerations of company performances. Students practise the systematic use of appropriate industry-standard computer technology for the analysis (for example, Excel or SPSS).

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The aim of this course is to lay an understanding of the most important concepts in Statistics and methods to analyse the data in Statistics. At the end of the course students should

* Apply appropriate statistical methods to analyse data and identify practical situations in which specific methods are appropriate.
* Select and apply hypotheses tests appropriate to the research questions and/or data available and draw inferences from the results
* Apply basic statistical methods to present/ communicate quantitative information in effective and usable ways
* be able to construct and use aggregate demand and aggregate supply model to analyze short run fluctuations and long run adjustment of the macroeconomy;
* Demonstrate competence in the use of appropriate statistical analysis software and in interpreting the results.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6  Chapter 7  Chapter 8  Chapter 9 | 5  5  5  5  5  5  5  5  5 | 3  3  3  3  3  3  3  3  3 | 2  2  2  2  2  2  2  2  2 | *Practice with computer software and report in group.* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **27** | **18** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: Number, Calculations and Equations**

1.1. Managers and numbers in Waters

1.2. Calculations and equations in Waters

1.3. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

1.4. Practice using Excel

**CHAPTER 2:** **Drawing Grapth**

2.1. Drawing graphs in Waters

2.2. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

2.3. Practice using Excel

**CHAPTER 3: Using Diagrams to Present Data**

3.1. Drawing graphs in Waters

3.2. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

3.3. Practice using Excel

**CHAPTER 4: Using numbers to describe data**

4.1. Drawing graphs in Waters

4.2. Measure of location

4.3. Variance and Standard deviation

4.4. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

4.5. Practice using Excel

**CHAPTER 5: Breakeven Compounding and discounting**

5.1. Ch 8 in Waters

5.2. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

5.3. Practice using Excel

**CHAPTER 6: Collecting data and Sample**

6.1. Ch 4+14 in Waters

6.2. Practice using SPSS: Dealing with Data

6.3. Practice using Eviews: Dealing with Data

**CHAPTER 7: Hypothesis testing and Testing for Differences in means, pairs, chi-sqd**

7.1. Hypothesis testing in Waters

7.2. Testing for Differences in means, pairs, chi-sqd in Waters

7.3. DO seminar exercises in class and at home

7.4. Practice using Excel

7.5. Practice using SPSS: Dealing with Data 2

7.6. Practice using Eviews: Dealing with Data

**CHAPTER 8: Regression and curve fitting**

8.1. Regression and curve fitting

8.2. Correlation

8.3. Practice using Excel

8.4. Practice using SPSS: Dealing with Data 3

8.5. Practice using Eviews: Dealing with Data

**CHAPTER 9: Forecasting**

9.1. Forecasting

9.2. Moving average

9.3. Practice using Excel

9.4. Practice using SPSS: Data Analysis

9.5. Practice using Eviews: Dealing with Data

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Waters, D. (2011) *Quantitative Methods for Business* (5th edition); Financial Times Prentice Hall Available with other books in a package through KORTEXT

Bryman, A. and Cramer, D. (1997) *Quantitative Data Analysis with SPSS for Windows*, London: Routledge

Buglear, J (2001) Stats Means Business, Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann

Field A (2005) Discovering Statistics Using SPSS for Windows, 2nd edition London: Sage

Harper, W.M. (1991) Statistics (6th edition); M and E Handbooks

Levine D., Berenson, M. and Stephan, D (1998) *Statistics for Managers*, London: Prentice Hall

Mann, P.S. (1995) Statistics for Business and Economics; Wiley

Morris, C. (2003) Quantitative Approaches in Business Studies (6th or 5th edition); Financial Times Prentice Hall

Owen, F. and Jones, R. (1994) Statistics; Pitman

Thomas, R. (1997) Quantitative Methods for Business Studies; Prentice Hall

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/gcsebitesize/maths/

www.booksites.net/morris

The companion web-site for Morris' book includes complementary questions for students to address. Students could actively pursue this website.

www.mathsyear2000.org

Look at the GCSE or A-Level icons. Follow the Statistics Tutorials/Exercises/Tests options

http://www.coventry.ac.uk/discuss

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

**Grading Policy:** Grades will be determined by the percentages listed below.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | Class Participation | 10% |  |
|  | Midterm Test | 20% |  |
|  | Project Presentation | 20% |  |
|  | Project Assignment | 50% |  |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **Signed**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence – Freedom – Happiness**  ---------------------------- |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1**. **COURSE NAME**: **Vietnam’s Economy**

Code: KHEH1101 Number of Credit: 03

**2**. **DEPARTMENT OF IN CHARGE INSTRUCTION:**

Office: Department of Economic History, Building A1, National Economics University Campus

Office Hours: The office is open 7.30am - 5.00pm

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Principles of economics (Microeconomics, Macroeconomics)

Principles of Marxist and Lennist.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Vietnam’s economy course studies the transition of economy from planned economy to a socialist – oriented market economy, and the actual state of Vietnam’s economy in “Doi moi” era (from 1986 to present). Course content incluces: economic development resources problems, economic institutions, economic growth situation, policies and the development of economic sectors.

This course clarify the theoritical and practices issues of Vietnam’s economy when tranfer from planned economic system to socialist – oriented market economy.

**5**. **COURSE** **OBJECTIVES**

This course is designed to provide student theoritical and practices knowledge about Vietnam’s economic development in the renovation era

* Capturing the comprehensive changes of Vietnam’s economy in the process of economic models tranfromation. Studies about the socialist – oriented market economy in Vietnam.
* Know about the scientific basis and creativity of State’s economic development strategies.
* Analysis economic events, Vietnam’s economic development and build the economic mindset as a prerequisites to research and solve the specific issues in the field of economic sector.
* Recognizing the trends and issues in developing socialist – oriented market economy in Vietnam today.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |  |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 6 | Chapter 6 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 7 | Chapter 7 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 8 | Chapter 8 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 9 | Chapter 9 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 10 | Chapter 10 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 11 | Chapter 11 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 12 | Chapter 12 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 13 | Chapter 13 | 2 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 14 | Chapter 14 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
|  | **Total** | 30 | 17 | 13 |  |

**CHAPTER 1**

**SUBJECTS AND RESEARCH METHODS**

This chapter introduces the basics of the subject: the object and scope of the study, the research methodology and methods.

Content

**1.1. The position of the course.**

**1.2. Subjects and research scope.**

**1.3. Research methods.**

**CHAPTER 2**

**ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT RESOURCES**

This chapter present some issues: concept, classify and the role of economic development resources; research on the status of economic development resources in Vietnam.

**2.1. Concept and the role of economic development resources.**

2.1.1. Concept.

2.1.2. Classify.

2.1.3. The role of economic development resources.

**2.2. The status of economic development resources in Vietnam.**

2.2.1. Human resources.

2.2.2. Economic capital.

2.2.3. Science and technology resources

2.2.4. Natural resources.

2.2.5. Other resoureces.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi, 2013 (Chapter 2).
2. Vũ Hy Chương (chủ biên): Vấn đề tạo nguồn lực tiến hành CNH-HĐH. National Political Publishing House, Hanoi, 2002.
3. Nguyễn Hữu Dũng: Sử dụng hiệu quả nguồn lực con người ở Việt Nam. Labour and Social Publisher, Hanoi, 2003.

**CHAPTER 3**

**ECONOMIC INSTITUTIONS**

This chapter present some issues about concept, impact factors of formation economic institiutions; function of economic institutions and status of economic institutions in Vietnam renovation era.

**3.1. Concept of economic institutions.**

3.1.1. Concept of institutions.

3.1.2. Economic institutions.

**3.2. Factors effecting the formation of economic institutions and funtion of economic institutions.**

3.2.1. Factors effecting the formation and completion of economic institutions

3.2.2. funtion of economic institutions

**3.3. Status of Vietnam economic institutions after renovation.**

3.3.1. Build the legal framework for market economy.

3.3.2. Reform the management system and the State management function.

3.3.3. Subjects engaged in production and business activities.

3.3.4. Creat all kind of market.

3.3.5. Genaral assessment of institutional reform.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam, National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 3).
2. Đinh Văn Ân - Lê Xuân Bá, Tiếp tục xây dựng và hoàn thiện thể chế kinh tế thị trường định hướng xã hội chủ nghĩa ở Việt Nam. Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi, 2006.
3. Lê Đăng Doanh, "Cơ sở khoa học hình thành đồng bộ hệ thống chính sách kinh tế vĩ mô của Nhà nước thúc đẩy công nghiệp hoá, hiện đại hoá", 6/2001.

**CHAPTER 4**

**ECONOMIC GROWTH**

This chapter present some issues about concept, impact factors of economic growth and status of economic growth in Vietnam renovation era.

**4.1. Concept of economic growth and impact factors of economic growth**

4.1.1. Concept of economic growth

4.1.2. Factors impact to economic growth

**4.2. Status and quality of Vietnam economic growth.**

4.2.1. The achivements of Vietnam’s economic growth.

4.2.2. Restrictions on ecnonomic growth in Vietnam

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 4).
2. Nguyễn Khắc Minh : Ảnh hưởng của tiến bộ công nghệ đến tăng trưởng kinh tế. Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi, 2005.
3. Nguyễn Văn Nam, Trần Thọ Đạt: Tốc độ và chất lượng tăng trưởng kinh tế ở Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi, 2006.

**CHAPTER 5**

**INDUSTRIALIZATION AND MODERNIZATION**

This chapter present some issues about concept, nature and content of industrialization and modernization process; completing industrialization and modernization strategies and policies.

**5.1. Content of industrialization and modernization.**

5.1.1. Nature of industrialization and modernization.

5.1.2. Basis contents of industrialization and modernization.

**5.2. Process of completing strategies and policies.**

5.2.1. Before “Doi moi”

5.2.2. After renovation era.

**5.3. Task of promoting industrialization and modernization in modern times.**

5.3.1. Vietnam in modern times.

5.3.2. task of promoting industrialization and modernization and target to 2020.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 5).
2. Ministry of Afgriculture and Rural development: Chiến lược phát triển nông nghiệp nông thôn thời kỳ CNH, HĐH đến 2010, Hanoi 6/2000.
3. Đảng Cộng sản Việt Nam: Văn kiện Đại hội Đại biểu toàn quốc lần thứ III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X,XI.
4. Central institute for economic managerment and UNDP: Nâng cao năng lực cạnh tranh quốc gia. National Political Publishing Houses, 2002.

**CHAPTER 6**

**FISCAL POLICY**

This chapter present about concept, the role of fiscal policy; Vietnam state budget and state budget adjustment in renovation period.

**6.1. Concept and the role of fiscal policy**

6.1.1. Concept

6.1.2. The role of fiscal policy

**6.2. Vietnam state budget in the renovation era.**

6.2.1. Tax system

6.2.2. Budget revenues.

**6.3. Vietnam state budget adjustment.**

6.3.1. Period 1986 – 1990

6.3.2. Period 19910 – 2000

6.3.3. Period 2001 – present.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 6).
2. Lê Đăng Doanh: Cơ sở khoa học hình thành đồng bộ hệ thống chính sách kinh tế vĩ mô của Nhà nước thúc đẩy công nghiệp hoá, hiện đại hoá. 6/2001.

**CHAPTER 7**

**MONETARY POLICY**

This chapter present some issues about monetary and banking system in Vietnam; adjust monetary policy in Vietnam through stages

**7.1. Overview of Vietnam’s banking system.**

**7.2. The state bank of Vietnam and monetary policy.**

7.2.1. Money supply controls.

7.2.2. Interest rate control and credit ceiling.

7.2.3. Regulate the exchange rate.

**7.3. Monetary policy adjustment through stages.**

7.3.1. Before 1989.

7.3.2. Period 1989 – 1991.

7.3.3. Period 1992 – 1998.

7.3.4. Period 1999 – 2003.

7.3.5. Period 2004 – present.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 7).
2. Nguyễn Văn Công: Chính sách tỉ giá hối đoái trong tiến trình hội nhập kinh tế ở Việt Nam, National Political Publishing House, 2004.

**CHAPTER 8**

**TRAINING – EDUCATION; LABOR – EMPLOYMENT AND SOCIAL SECURITY**

This chapter present social security system in Vietnam; status of training – education, labor – employment policies and this impacts.

**8.1. Overview of Vietnam’s social security system.**

8.1.1. The relationship between economic growth and social security

8.1.2. Social policy framework in Vietnam.

**8.2. Training – education policy.**

8.2.1. Concept, role and target of training – education policy.

8.2.2. Main content of training – education policy.

8.2.3. Impact of training – education policy.

**8.3. Labor – employment policy.**

8.3.1. Concept, role and target of labor - employment policy

8.3.2. Main content of labor – employment policy in renovation era.

8.3.3. Impact of labor – employment policy.

**8.4. Social security policy**

8.4.1. Concept, role and target of social security.

8.4.2. The process of implementing social security policy.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng : Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 7)
2. Vietnam institue for development strategies: Cơ sở khoa học của một số vấn đề trong chiến lược phát triển kinh tế- xã hội Việt Nam đến năm 2020. National Political Publishing House ,2001.

**CHAPTER 9**

**INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC INTEGRATION**

This chapter introduces the international economic integration of Vietnam; the process of international integration of Vietnam and the number of organizations and international economic forums Vietnam joined.

**9.1. Concept of international economic integration.**

**9.2. Basis of international economic integration.**

**9.3. Opportunities and challenges of international economic integration for Vietnam**

**9.4.The process of international economic integration of Vietnam.**

9.4.1. The view of Vietnam on international economic integration.

9.4.2. The process of international economic integration of Vietnam

**9.5. Organizations and international economic forums Vietnam joined.**

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng: Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hà Nội 2013 (Chapter 9).
2. The Ministry of Planning an Investment, UNDP: Việt Nam hướng tới năm 2020. National Political Publishing House, 2001.
3. Bộ Kế hoạch và Đầu tư: Tổng kết 20 năm đầu tư nước ngoài.
4. Vietnam institue for development strategies: Cơ sở khoa học của một số vấn đề trong chiến lược phát triển kinh tế- xã hội Việt Nam đến năm 2020. National Political Publishing House, 2001.
5. Nguyễn Trọng Xuân: Đầu tư trực tiếp nước ngoài với công cuộc công nghiệp hoá, hiện đại hoá ở Việt Nam. Social sciences publishing house, 2002

**CHAPTER 10**

**AGRICULTURE**

This chapter present the role of agriculture in the economy, the characteristics of agriculture, policy and development status of agriculture in Vietnam renovation era.

**10.1. The role of agriculture in the economy.**

**10.2. The characteristics of agriculture.**

**10.3. Development status of agriculture in Vietnam renovation era.**

10.3.1. Agriculture development policy.

10.3.2. The achievement and limitation of Vietnam agriculture.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng (chủ biên): Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 10).
2. Nguyễn Văn Bích - Chu Tiến Quang: Phát triển nông nghiệp, nông thôn trong giai đoạn CNH, HĐH ở Việt Nam. Agriculture Publishing House, Hà Nội, 1999.
3. Ministry of Afgriculture and Rural development: Chiến lược phát triển nông nghiệp nông thôn thời kỳ CNH, HĐH đến 2010, Hanoi, 6/2000.
4. Nguyễn Văn Nam, Trần Thọ Đạt: Tốc độ và chất lượng tăng trưởng kinh tế ở Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher,Hanoi, 2006.

**CHAPTER 11**

**INDUSTRY**

This chapter present the role of industry in the economy, the characteristics of industry, policy and development status of industry in Vietnam renovation era.

**11.1. The role of indusstry in the process of socio – economic development.**

**11.2. The development status of industry in Vietnam renovation era.**

11.2.1. Industry development strategies in the industrialization and modernization.

11.2.2. The status of industry development.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng (chủ biên): Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 11)
2. Nguyễn Khắc Minh (chủ biên): Ảnh hưởng của tiến bộ công nghệ đến tăng trưởng kinh tế. Science and Technology Publishing House, Hanoi, 2005.
3. Nguyễn Văn Nam, Trần Thọ Đạt: Tốc độ và chất lượng tăng trưởng kinh tế ở Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi, 2006.
4. Vietnam institue for development strategies: Tổng quan về cạnh tranh công nghiệp Việt Nam. National Political Publishing House, 2001.

**CHAPTER 12**

**SERVICES**

This chapter instroduces the concept, types of services, the role of services sector and the development status of services in Vietnam renovation era.

**12.1. Concept and types of services.**

**12.2. The role of services sector**

**12.3. The status of Vietnam services sector development after “doi moi”**

12.3.1. Growth and structure.

12.3.2. Contribution to GDP, exports and solve the problems of employment, income, environment.

12.3.3. The socialization of public services.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng (chủ biên): Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 12).
2. Nguyễn Văn Nam, Trần Thọ Đạt: Tốc độ và chất lượng tăng trưởng kinh tế ở Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi, 2006.
3. Central institute for economic managerment and UNDP: Nâng cao năng lực cạnh tranh quốc gia. National Political Publishing House, 2002.

**CHAPTER 13**

**COMMERCE**

This chapter presents the concept, the role of commerce in the market economy, the development status of commerce in Vietnam renovation era

**13.1. Concept and the role of commerce in the market economy.**

**13.2. Vietnam commerce in period 1975 -1986**

**13.3. Vietnam commerce in renovation period (1986 to present)**

13.3.1. Commerce policy.

13.3.2. The status of commerce development from 1986 to present.

References

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng (chủ biên): Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 13).
2. Nguyễn Văn Nam, Trần Thọ Đạt: Tốc độ và chất lượng tăng trưởng kinh tế ở Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi, 2006.

**CHAPTER 14**

**FOREIGN INVESTMENT**

This chapter presents the concept of foreign investment, the factors that affect on foreign investment attraction, advantages and disadvantages of foreign investment attraction policy in Vietnam; the status of foreign investment capital.

**14.1. Concept and the factors that affect on foreign investment attraction.**

14.1.1. Concept.

14.1.2. Types of foreign investment

14.1.3. Factors affect on foreign investment

**14.2. Advantages and disadvantages of foreign investment attraction policy in Vietnam**

**14.3. The status of foreign investment capital.**

14.3.1. Foreign direct investment

14.3.2. Foreign indirect investment.

14.3.3. Official investment assitstance.

Reference

1. Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng (chủ biên): Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hanoi 2013 (Chapter 14).
2. Foreign investment report of The Ministry of Planning an Investment
3. The Ministry of Planning and Investment: 20 years foreign investment summary.
4. Mai Ngọc Cường: Hoàn thiện chính sách và tổ chức thu hút đầu tư trực tiếp của nước ngoài ở Việt Nam. National Political Publishing House, 2000.

**7. REQUIRED TEXBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Nguyễn Văn Thường – Trần Khánh Hưng: Giáo trình Kinh tế Việt Nam. National Economic University Publisher, Hà Nội 2013

**8. RECOMMEND TEXT & OTHER READING**

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

Result based on:

* The final examination (form of exam: writing, essay combines questions and multiple choice question), 60%
* The attendance: 10%
* Assignments: 30%

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** | |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** | |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** | |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

*(Issued under Decision No.1380/QĐ-ĐHKTQD on 15/8/2016 by the University President)*

**1. COURSE NAME:** Econometrics II

Code: TOTKT1102 Number of Credit: 02

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Mathematical Economics

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 14h-17h Friday  
**Office Telephone:** 084.36283007

**3. PRE-REQUISITE: Econometrics 1**

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**

Econometrics II provides an introduction to the forecasting techniques using time series data. It consists of four chapters: Chapter 11 presents concepts in time series, smoothing techniques and extrapolation. Chapter 12 focuses on stationary series and related testing as well as some basis statistics of a stationary series. Co-integration is also presented in chapter 12. Chapter 13 and chapter 14 consider frequently used models in time series forecasting: ARIMA, VAR and VECM.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**

The course aims to provide students with modern techniques in time series forecasting, which is the next step from the basic regression model in Econometrics 1. By the end of the course, students will be able to:

* competently forecast and analyse time series data using relevant models.
* conduct the forecast and analysis on computers

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| STT | Contents | Total hours | In details | | Notes |
| Theory | Practice, Discussion, Exams |
| 1  2  3  4 | Chapter 11  Chapter 12  Chapter 13  Chapter 14 | 6  6  9  9 | 4  2  5  5 | 2  2  4  4 | Need a projector |
|  | **Total** | **30** | **18** | **12** |  |

**CHAPTER 11 – TIME SERIES, SMOOTHING AND EXTRAPOLATION**

This chapter includes: extrapolation techniques, components of a time series, and some smoothing techniques.

11.1. Simple extrapolation techniques

11.2. Testing for randomness – run test

11.3. Simple smoothing techniques

11.4. Seasonal adjustment

11.5. Components of a time series

11.6. Holt-Winters smoothing and forecasting

11.7. Hodrick –Prescott (HP) filter

11.8. Census II X-11

Reading materials:

1- Nguyen Quang Dong and Nguyen Thi Minh, 2011, Econometrics, NEU publisher, Chapter 11

2- Vu Thieu, Nguyen Quang Dong, and Nguyễn Khac Minh, 2001, Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher, Chapter.

3- Enders, Applied Time series, Wiley, 2004, 2-nd edition.

4- Hamilton, J. D, 1994, *Time Series Analysis*, Princeton: Princeton University Press

**CHAPTER 12 – NON-STATIONARY TIME SERIES**

This chapter considers the stationarity of a series, testing stationarity, some statistical characteristics of a stationary series, and co-integration of non-stationary series

12.1. Stationary and non-stationary series

12.2. Some simple random series

12.3. Unit root tests

12.4. Autocorrelation function

12.5. Non-stationary series and basic regression models

12.6. Spurious regression, trend- stationary and difference stationary series.

12.7. Co-integration tests

Reading materials:

1- Nguyen Quang Dong and Nguyen Thi Minh , 2012, Econometrics, NEU publisher, Chapter 12

2- Vu Thieu, Nguyen Quang Dong, and Nguyễn Khac Minh, 2001, Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher, Chapter.

3- Enders,, 2004, Applied Time series, Wiley, 2-nd edition.

4- Hamilton, J. D, 1994, *Time Series Analysis*, Princeton: Princeton University Press

**CHAPTER 13 – ARIMA MODEL**

This chapter introduces a univariate forecast model andARIMA model with the Box- Jenkins methodology.

13.1. AR, MA and ARIMA

13.2 Box- Jenkins methodology

13.3 ARIMA model with seasonalilty

13.4. Examples

Readings:

1- Nguyen Quang Dong and Nguyen Thi Minh, 2012, Econometrics, NEU publisher, Chapter 13.

2- Vu Thieu, Nguyen Quang Dong, and Nguyễn Khac Minh, 2001, Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher, Chapter.

3- Enders, 2004, Applied Time series, Wiley, 2-nd edition.

4- Hamilton, J. D, 1994, *Time Series Analysis*, Princeton: Princeton University Press.

**CHAPTER 14 – VAR MODEL AND CO-INTEGRATION**

This chapter presents VAR model, which is a multivariate model for forecasting – a direct extension of ARIMA model. When the series are co-integrated the VECM will be more appropriate as it takes into account the integration relationship among variables.

14.1. VAR model - introduction

14.2. VAR model - estimation

14.3. Co-integration

14.4. Testing co-integration

Reading materials:

1- Nguyen Quang Dong and Nguyen Thi Minh, 2012, Econometrics, NEU publisher, Chapter 14.

2- Vu Thieu, Nguyen Quang Dong, and Nguyễn Khac Minh, 2001, Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher.

3- Enders, 2004, Applied Time series, Wiley, 2-nd edition.

4- Hamilton, J. D., 1994, *Time Series Analysis*, Princeton: Princeton University Press.

**7. TEXTBOOK**

Nguyen Quang Dong and Nguyen Thi Minh, 2012, Econmetrics, NEU publisher.

**8. READING MATERIALS**

1- Vu Thieu, Nguyen Quang Dong, and Nguyễn Khac Minh, 2001, Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher, Chapter.

2- Nguyen Quang Dong, 2002, Bài tập Econometrics, Science and Technology publisher, Chapter.

3- Damodar N. Gujarati, 2003, Basic Econometrics, fourth Edition, McGraw-Hill.

4- Enders, 2004, Applied Time series, Wiley, 2-nd edition.

5- Hamilton, J. D., 1994, *Time Series Analysis*, Princeton: Princeton University Press.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Band score: 10 and 4

- In which:

+ Class participation: 10%

+ Midterm test: 30%

+ Final Exam: 60%

Conditions for taking the final test:

+ Attend at least 80% of scheduled course hours

+ Take the midterm test.

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Monetary policy, banking and financial markets

Code: KHMA3304 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** MACROECONOMICS DEPARTMENT

**Office:** Room 803, Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8 am – 5 pm

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Macroeconomics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the way that banks, financial markets and monetary policy work and interact in theory and practice. We look into some of the problems and dilemmas that central banks face in choosing appropriate policies and implementing them, both in normal times and during financial crises. Throughout the course examples from financial newspapers and other sources are used to familiarise students with how theoretical concepts are used in practice.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

At the end of this course students should be able to

- understand the theories of the demand for money and their implications

- understand how the supply of money is created within the banking system

- understand how central banks conduct monetary policy;

- demonstrate their knowledge on the various tools, targets and goals employed in monetary policy and understand their limitations.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: An introduction to money and the financial system | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Central banks in the world today | 4 | 2 | 2 |
| 3 | Chapter 3: The central bank balance sheet and the money supply process | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Monetary policy: stabilizing the domestic economy | 8 | 6 | 2 |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Exchange rate policy and the central bank | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| 6 | Chapter 6: Money growth, money demand and modern monetary policy | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 7 | Chapter 7: Output, inflation and monetary policy | 8 | 6 | 2 |  |
| 8 | Chapter 8: Modern monetary policy and the challenges facing central bankers | 4 | 2 | 2 |  |
|  | Total | 40 | 28 | 12 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: AN INTRODUCTION TO MONEY AND THE FINANCIAL SYSTEM**

This chapter explains core principles of money and banking as well as some main parts of the financial system. This chapter also introduces financial instruments, the structure of financial market and financial institutions.

**1.1. The six parts of the financial system**

**1.2. The five core principles of money and banking**

Principle 1: time has value

Principle 2: risk requires compensation

Principle 3: information is the basis for decisions

Principle 4: markets determine prices and allocate resources

Principle 5: stability improves welfare

**1.3. Financial instruments, financial market and financial institutions**

1.3.1. Financial instruments

Use of financial instruments

Characteristics of financial instruments: standardization and information

Underlying versus derivative instruments

A primer for valuing financial instruments

1.3.2. Financial markets

The role of financial markets

The structure of financial markets

Characteristics of a well-run financial market

1.3.3. Financial institutions

The role of the financial institutions

The structure of the financial industry

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 1 and chapter 3.**

**CHAPTER 2: CENTRAL BANKS IN THE WORLD TODAY**

This chapter explains the functions and objectives of central banks. This chapter also provides knowledge for students to understand the features of an effective central bank and fiscal challenges for central banks.

**2.1. The basics: how central banks originated and their role today**

2.1.1. The Government’s bank

2.1.2. The Bankers’ bank

**2.2. Stability: the primary objective of all central banks**

2.2.1. Low, stable inflation

2.2.2. High, stable real growth

2.2.3. Financial system stability

2.2.4. Interest-rate and exchange-rate stability

**2.3 Meeting the challenge: creating a successful central bank**

2.3.1 The need for independence

2.3.2. Decision making by committee

2.3.3. The need for accountability and transparency

2.3.4. The policy framework, policy tradeoffs, and credibility

**2.4. Fitting everything together: central banks and fiscal policy**

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 15.**

**CHAPTER 3: THE CENTRAL BANK BALANCE SHEET AND THE MONETARY SUPPLY PROCESS**

This chapter construct the central bank’s balance sheet and explains the changing the size and mix of the balance sheet. Students are also introduced the deposit expansion multiplier, the monetary base and the money supply.

**3.1. The central bank’s balance sheet**

3.1.1 Assets

3.1.2. Liabilities

3.1.3. The importance of disclosure

**3.2. Changing the size and composition of the balance sheet**

3.2.1 Open market operations

3.2.2. Foreign exchange intervention

3.2.3. Discount loans

3.2.4. Cash withdrawal

**3.3 The deposit expansion multiplier**

3.3.1. Deposit creation in a single bank

3.3.2. Deposit expansion in a system of banks

**3.4 The monetary base and the monetary supply**

3.4.1. Deposit expansion with excess reserves and cash withdrawals

3.4.2. The arithmetic of the money multiplier

3.4.3. The limits of the central bank’s ability to control the quantity of money

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 17.**

**CHAPTER 4: THE MONETARY POLICY: STABILIZING THE DOMESTIC ECONOMY**

This chapter discusses both conventional policy tools and unconventional policy tools that centrals can use to archive economic stability. This chapter will focus on three links: the link between the central bank’s balance sheet and its policy tools; between the policy tools and monetary policy objectives; and between monetary policy and the real world.

**4.1 The Federal Reserve’s conventional policy toolbox**

4.1.1. The target Federal funds rate and open market operations

4.1.2. Discount lending, the lender of last resort, and crisis

4.1.3. Management

4.1.4. Reserve requirements

**4.2. Operational policy at the European Central Bank**

4.2.1. The ECB’s target interest rate and open market operations

4.2.2. The marginal lending facility

4.2.3. The deposit facility

4.2.4. Reserve requirements

**4.3. Linking tools to objectives: making choices**

4.3.1. Desirable features of a policy instrument

4.3.2. Operating instruments and intermediate targets

**4.4. A guide to central bank interest rates: the Taylor rule**

**4.5. Unconventional policy tools**

4.5.1. Forward guidance

4.5.2. Quantitative easing

4.5.3. Targeted asset purchases

4.5.4. Making an effective exit

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 18.**

**CHAPTER 5: EXCHANGE RATE POLICY AND THE CENTRAL BANK**

This chapter focuses on explaining the questions: why is a country’s exchange rate linked to its domestic monetary policy; are there circumstances when exchange-rate stabilization becomes the overriding objective of central bankers; If so, should they try to fix the rate at which their currency can be exchanged for some other currency and should a country consider give up its currency entirely.

**5.1. Linking exchange rate policy with domestic monetary policy**

5.1.1. Inflation and the long-run implications of purchasing power parity

5.1.2. Interest rates and the short-run implications of capital market

5.1.3. Arbitrage

5.1.4. Capital controls and the policymakers’ choice

**5.2. Mechanics of exchange rate management**

5.2.1. The central bank’s balance sheet

5.2.2. Sterilized intervention

**5.3. The costs, benefits, and risks of fixed exchange rates**

5.3.1. Assessing the costs and benefits

5.3.2. The danger of speculative attacks

5.3.3. Summarizing the case for fixed exchange rate

5.3.4. Exchange rate pegs and the Bretton Woods system

5.3.5. Hard pegs: currency boards and dollarization

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 19.**

**CHAPTER 6: MONEY GROWTH, MONEY DEMAND, AND MODERN MONETARY POLICY**

This chapter firstly aims at examining the link between money growth and inflation in order to clarify the role of money in monetary policy. Second, this chapter explains the logic underlying central bankers’ focus on interest rates.

**6.1. Why we care about monetary aggregates**

**6.2. The quantity theory and the velocity of money**

6.2.1. Velocity and the equation of exchange

6.2.2. The quantity theory of money

6.2.3. The facts about velocity

**6.3. The demand for money**

6.3.1. The transactions demand for money

6.3.2. The portfolio demand for money

**6.4. Targeting money growth in a low-inflation environment**

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 20.**

**CHAPTER 7: OUTPUT, INFLAION AND MONETARY POLICY**

The objective of this chapter is to understand fluctuations in inflation and real output and how central bank use conventional interest-rate policy to stabilize them. In this chapter, we will develop a macroeconomic model of fluctuations in the business cycle in which monetary policy plays a central role to understand how modern central banks can use their policy tools to stabilize short-run fluctuations in output and inflation.

**7.1. Output and inflation in the long run**

**7.2. Monetary policy and the dynamic aggregate demand curve**

7.2.1. Aggregate expenditure and the real interest rate

7.2.2. Inflation, the real interest rate and the monetary policy reaction curve

7.2.3. The dynamic aggregate demand curve

**7.3. Aggregate supply**

**7.4. Equilibrium and the determination of output and inflation**

7.4.1. Short-run equilibrium

7.4.2. Adjustment to long-run equilibrium

7.4.3. The sources of fluctuations in output and inflation

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 22.**

**CHAPTER 8: MODERN MONETARY POLICY AND THE CHALLENGES FACING CENTRAL BANKERS**

This chapter focus on explaining the transmission mechanism of monetary policy and answering the question of why, in the aftermath of financial crises like 2007-2009 episode, monetary policy and the challenges facing central bankers are especially difficult.

**8.1. The monetary policy transmission mechanism**

8.1.1. The traditional channels: interest rates and exchange rates

8.1.2. Bank-lending and balance-sheet channels

8.1.3. Asset-price channels: wealth and investment

8.1.4. Financial crises and the transmission of monetary policy

**8.2. The challenges modern monetary policymakers face**

8.2.1. Booms and busts in property and equity prices

8.2.2. Deflation and the zero nominal-interest-rate bound

8.2.3. The evolving structure of the financial system

Texts and readings: Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Ed, McGraw-Hill, 2014, chapter 23.**

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Stephen G. **Cecchetti and Kermit L. Schoenholtz, *Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 4rd Editon, McGraw-Hill.**

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

**Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 10th Edition, Pearson.**

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of classtime

- Final exam: essay questions and exercises

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **Signed**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** **Economic Growth**

Code: **KHMA1122** Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:**

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm from Mondays to Fridays  
**Office Telephone:** 04.36280280

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Before registering this course, students have to finish the following courses: Macroeconomics 2, Microeconomics 2

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course offers an introduction to the theories of economic growth as well as empirical analysis using international data. These models are to shed light on both the process of economic growth at the world level and sources of income and growth differences across countries. Students will be equipped with a comprehensive system of various growth theories from neoclassical to endogenous ones with R&D and endogenous labor supply.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

By the end of the course, students are expected to

* Be familiar with a set of growth theories explaining sources of economic growth and income divergence across countries;
* Be able to develop some of the most important tools for analyzing economic growth issues;
* Be able to carry out empirical analysis of economic growth using international data.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1  2  3  4  5  6 | Chapter 1  Chapter 2  Chapter 3  Chapter 4  Chapter 5  Chapter 6 | 7  7  7  8  8  8 | 5  5  5  6  6  6 | 2  2  2  2  2  2 | *Lecture room with microphone and projector* |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **33** | **12** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION TO ECONOMIC GROWTH**

This chapter introduces basic concepts and the importance, as well as characteristics of growth process.

**1.1. Concepts and measurement of economic growth**

**1.2. The importance of economic growth**

**1.3. Empirical evidence of economic growth**

**1.4. History of theories on economic growth**

**CHAPTER 2: GROWTH MODEL WITH EXOGENOUS SAVING RATE**

This chapter presents economic growth models with exogenous saving rate. It also points out key characteristics of exogenous growth theories.

**2.1. Economic growth model structure**

**2.2. The Solow-Swan neoclassical model**

2.2.1 Neoclassical production functions

2.2.2. Dynamics

2.2.3. Steady state

2.2.4. Golden rules and dynamic inefficiency

2.2.5. Policy experiments

2.2.6. Absolute and conditional convergence

2.2.7. Per capita income convergence and divergence

**2.3. Endogenous models**

2.3.1. The AK model

2.3.2. Constant elasticity of substitution production (CES)

2.3.3. The Leontief production and the Harrod-Domar arguments

2.3.4. Economic growth models and poverty trap

**CHAPTER 3: MICRO-BASED GROWTH: THE RAMSEY MODEL**

This chapter develops neoclassical models on the basis of micro-behavior.

**3.1. Households**

**3.2. Firms**

**3.3. Steady state**

**3.4. Dynamics**

**3.5. Ramsey model in an open economy**

**3.6. Overlapping generations models**

**CHAPTER 4: ENDOGENOUS GROWTH MODELS**

This chapter presents endogenous growth theories that draw much attention in the recent time.

**4.1. One sector models of endogenous growth**

4.1.1. The AK model

4.1.2. An one-sector model with physical and human capital

4.1.3. Models with knowledge spillovers

4.1.4. Government and economic growth

4.1.5. Dynamic tendency in endogenous growth models

**4.2. Two-sector models of endogenous growth**

4.2.1. The model of two production sectors

4.2.2. The Uzawa-Lucas model

**CHAPTER 5: TECHNOLOGY AND GROWTH**

This chapter studies the role of technology on economic growth and the impacts of technological progress to economic growth.

**5.1. Growth models with a variety of products**

5.1.1. The producers of final output

5.1.2. Research firms

5.1.3. Households and market equilibrium

5.1.4. General equilibrium and determinants of the growth rate

5.1.5. Pareto optimality

5.1.6. Romer’s model of technological change

**5.2. Schumpeterian models of quality ladders**

5.2.1. The model

5.2.2. Innovation by the leader

5.2.3. Pareto optimality

**5.3. The diffusion of technology**

**CHAPTER 6: LABOR SUPPLY AND POPULATION**

This chapter introduces some effects of labor supply and population into economic growth models.

**6.1. Migration in models of economic growth**

6.1.1. Migration in the Solow-Swan model

6.1.2. Migration in the Ramsey model

6.1.3. The Braun model of migration and growth

**6.2. Fertility choice**

**6.3. Labor/Leisure choice**

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS:**

Lecture notes

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings:

1. Trần Thọ Đạt et al. (2010). *Mô hình tăng trưởng kinh tế Textbook*. National Economics University Publishing House. Hà Nội, Việt Nam.

2. Robert J. Barro và Xavier Sala-i-Martin (1999). *Economic Growth*. The MIT Press. London, England.

3. The MIT Department of Economics (2003). *Economic Growth (lecture notes).* United States.

4. Neri Salvadori (2003). *The Theory of Economic Growth: a ‘classical’ perspective.* University of Pisa, Italy.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Course assessment will be based on two midterm tests/presentations (25% each) and a final exam (50%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

1. **COURSE NAME:** Personal Financial Planning

Code: NHTM1119E Number of Credits: 3

1. **DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** School of Banking and Finance

Office: Building A1, National Economics University  
Office Hours: Weekdays, 7.30 – 16.30

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Students had to finish the following courses before taking this course:

Microeconomics 1 & 2

Macroeconomics 1& 2

Econometrics

Corporate Finance

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Financial planning is a comprehensive process for setting and prioritizing your financial goals. The objective of this course is for business students to further develop methods, strategies, and financial tools for making optimal resource allocation decisions evidenced through utilization of personal finance concepts including budgeting, investment analysis, and planning techniques. In addition, students will develop a deeper understanding of credit, investment options, large purchases, and retirement planning. As a result, students will learn how to develop a budget and create a financial plan. In addition, the course also provides the way how financial planner to help the students setting and implementing their personal finance planning because financial planners may have knowledge and experience in many of these areas.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The course is designed to introduce the econometrics tools most used in finance and to gain understanding of the sources and characteristics of financial data as well as current and classic applications.

Upon completion of the course students will be able to:

* Making personal financial plan and career decisions through identifying social and economic influences on personal financial goals and decisions, developing personal financial goals, and calculating time value of money situations associated with personal financial decisions
* Analyze money management of personal through identifying the main components of wise money management, creating a personal balance sheet and cash flow statement, developing and implementing a personal budget, and connect money management activities with saving for personal financial goals
* Create financial assets investment strategies of person through identifying the major tax types in society and selecting appropriate tax strategies for various life situations, identifying strategies for effective consumer buying, and establishing an investment program
* Analyze the personal and legal aspects of estate planning through analyzing current assets and liabilities for retirement and estimate retirement living costs, determining planned retirement income and develop balanced budget based on retirement income, distinguishing among various types of wills and trusts
* How a financial planner can help save you time, remain disciplined about your financial strategies

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: Personal Finance Planning in Action | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Personal money management skills | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3: Wise purchasing strategies and financial products for person | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Personal investment strategies | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Financial Planner | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | 45 | 30 | 15 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: Personal Finance Planning in Action**

Identify social and economic influences on personal financial goals and decisions. Making personal financial plan and career decisions through identifying social and economic influences on personal financial goals and decisions, developing personal financial goals, and calculating time value of money situations associated with personal financial decisions

Reading:

Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

**CHAPTER 2: Personal money management skills**

Analyze money management of personal through identifying the main components of wise money management, creating a personal balance sheet and cash flow statement, developing and implementing a personal budget, and connect money management activities with saving for personal financial goals

Reading:

Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

**CHAPTER 3: Wise purchasing strategies and financial products for person**

Apply how to wisely buying identifying strategies for effective consumer buying, implementing a process for making consumer purchases, describing steps to take to resolve consumer problems, evaluating legal alternative available to consumers

Create financial assets investment strategies of person through identifying the major tax types in society and selecting appropriate tax strategies for various life situations, identifying strategies for effective consumer buying, and establishing an investment program

Reading:

Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

**CHAPTER 4: Personal investment strategies**

Analyze the personal and legal aspects of estate planning through analyzing current assets and liabilities for retirement and estimate retirement living costs, determining planned retirement income and develop balanced budget based on retirement income, distinguishing among various types of wills and trusts.

Reading:

Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

**CHAPTER 5: Financial Planner**

How a financial planner can help save you time, remain disciplined about your financial strategies. Find six steps that use in constructing a Personal Financial Plan ensures that we have a clear picture of your financial status and have the opportunity to look carefully at income and outgoings, cash flow, any assets or liabilities and how all these come together to make a financial plan for the short, medium and long term.

Reading:

Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

- Jack R. Kapoor, Les R.Dlabay, Robert J. Hughes, Melissa M. Hart (2016), *Focus on Personal Finance*, Mc Graw-Hill Education.

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* CFP Board, *Personal Financial Planning*, retrieved at <http://www.cfp.net/docs/publications/download-a-pdf-version.pdf?sfvrsn=0>
* Mathieu R. Despard, Gina A. N. Chowa, Lauren J. Hart (2012), *Personal Financial Problems: Opportunities for Social Work Interventions*?, Journal of Social Service Research, 38:342–350, 2012
* TGC, *Sample Completed Personal Financial Statement*, retrieved at <http://cayemittegroup.com/docs/11_sample-completed-personal-financial-statement.pdf>
* NC Civic Education Consortium, *Personal Financial Literacy: Checking*, retrieved at <http://civics.sites.unc.edu/files/2012/05/PFLChecking10.pdf>
* Economics and Personal Finance, *Personal Finance Activities*, retrieved at <http://www.cengage.com/resource_uploads/downloads/1133562108_353491.pdf>
* Stuart Heckman (2014), *Factors Related to Financial Stress among College Students*, Journal of Financial Therapy Volume 5, retrieved at <http://newprairiepress.org/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1063&context=jft>
* JP Morgan (2016), *Guide to Retirement*, retrieved at: <https://am.jpmorgan.com/blob-gim/1383280097558/83456/JP-GTR.pdf>
* The Vanguard (2001), Prepare to Retire, Retrieved at http://www.vanguard.com/pdf/bptr.pdf

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students are eligible for the final exam if:

- Attending at least 75% of classroom time.

- Obtaining at least 5 points (out of 10) in the periodic tests.

Besides:

- Participating fully in the discussions and homework.

- Mode of final exam: Essay exam

- Grade calculation for the module:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Scores** | **Proportion** | **Total score** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Mid-term test | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final examination | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Commercial Banking

Code: NHTM1102 Number of Credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Commercial Banking Department

**Office:** Building A1 NEU campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm from Monday to Friday

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Students should finish the course “Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Market 1” before starting this course

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

The banking industry has been on the globalization trend with increasingly growing financial service providers. The sector also offers potential and interesting career opportunities. On the ground of its significance, this module covers theories and practices in banking management. The topics are divided into four broad themes, comprising overview of the banking sector; management of liabilities and equity; management of assets portfolio; and methods of interest calculation in banks.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The course mainly aims at building the fundamental knowledge for students in banking as follows:

1. Basic knowledge and skills in commercial banking operations, such as understanding bank functions and operations, main activities, challenges and opportunities; techniques of fund mobilization by deposit and non-deposit borrowing; knowledge and managerial skills of main items of banks’ assets; understanding two methods of simple interest and compound interest calculations.
2. Differences between credit institutions, banks and non-bank financial institution, as well as the gap between commercial banks, cooperative banks, policy banks, financial companies, leasing companies and people's credit funds.
3. Main banking services in modern life.
4. Fundamental milestones in formation and development of Vietnamese banking system.
5. Sources of funds and their management.
6. Use of funds and their management.
7. Two basic methods of interest calculation operations.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Notes*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 10 | 7 | 3 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 10 | 7 | 3 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 10 | 7 | 3 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 15 | 10 | 5 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **31** | **14** |  |

**CHAPTER 1– OVERVIEW OF BANKING SECTOR**

**Brief introduction about the chapter**: The chapter presents the formation and development of banks, from which different bank related definitions are discussed. fundamental topics in banking management with different bank definitions. The overview is also expanded to many functions, services, organization of commercial banks. The chapter is concluded with history and structure of commercial banks in Vietnam.

**1.1 Formation and development of banks**

1.1.1 Formation

1.1.2 Development

1.1.3. Bank related definitions

**1.2. Functions of banks**

1.2.1 Financial intermediation

1.2.2 Payment intermediation

1.2.3 Creation of payment means

**1.3 Banking operations**

1.3.1 Funds mobilization

1.3.2 Use of funds

1.3.3 Other banking activities

**1.4 Banking system in Vietnam**

1.4.1 History

1.4.2 Structure

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Phan Thi Thu Ha (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics University Publishing House. Chapter 1.
2. Mi*s*kin. F.S. (1994). *The Economics of Money. Banking and Financial Markets. Technology and Science Publishing House*. Chapters 9 and 10.
3. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Chapters 1. 2.
4. Legal documentations issued by State Bank of Vietnam and related agencies. For examples:

* National Assembly (2010), *Law on Credit Institutions* No. 47/2010/QH12 approved by the Vietnam National Assembly on June 16, 2010.
* National Assembly (2010), *Law on The State bank of Vietnam* No. 46/2010/QH12 approved by the Vietnam National Assembly on June 16, 2010.

**CHAPTER 2 – METHODS OF INTEREST CALCULATION IN BANKS**

**Brief introduction about the chapter:** Simple and compound interest calculation, which are the two principal methods in banks, are presented in Chapter 2 to familiarize students with the fundamental techniques to be applied in various banking operations.

**2.1 Simple interest methods**

4.1.1 Concepts

4.1.2 Formula

**2.2 Compound interest methods**

4.2.1 Concepts

4.2.2 Formula

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Mai Sieu (1999). The textbook of Financial Maths. Vietnamese Educational Publishing House. chapters 2, 4, 5.

**CHAPTER 3 – SOURCES OF FUNDS AND FUND MANAGEMENT**

**Brief introduction about the chapter:** The chapter sheds the light on: (i) main items, characteristics and influencing factors of funding sources; (ii) objectives and techniques of liability management; (iii) objectives and techniques of equity management.

**3.1. Sources of funds**

3.1.1. Shareholder’s equity

3.1.1.1 Concepts and characteristics

3.1.1.2 Functions

3.1.1.3 Components

3.1.2. Liabilities

3.1.2.1 Definition and classifications

3.1.2.2 Components

**3.2. Fund management**

3.2.1. Liabilities management

3.2.1.1 Objectives

3.2.1.2 Contents

3.2.2. Equity management

3.2.2.1. Objectives

3.2.2.2. Contents

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Phan Thi Thu Ha (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics University Publishing House. Chapters 2. 14.
2. Mi*s*kin. F.S. (1994). *The Economics of Money. Banking and Financial Markets. Technology and Science Publishing House*. Chapters 9 and 10.
3. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Chapters 12, 13, 14, 15.
4. Legal documentations issued by State Bank of Vietnam and related agencies. For examples:

* National Assembly (2010), *Law on Credit Institutions* No. 47/2010/QH12 approved by the Vietnam National Assembly on June 16, 2010.
* State Bank of Vietnam (2004), *Decision 1160/2004/QĐ-NHNN on saving deposit*, dated September 13 2004.
* State Bank of Vietnam (2003), *Decision 581/2003/QĐ-NHNN on Compulsory reserves applicable to credit institutions*, dated June 9 2003.

**CHAPTER 4 – ASSET PORTFOLIO AND ITS MANAGEMENT**

**Brief introduction about the chapter:** This chapter focuses on (i) main asset items; characteristics and influencing factors of each item; (ii) asset management in commercial banks.

**4.1 Asset portfolio**

4.1.1 Cash and cash equivalents

4.1.2 Securities

4.1.3 Credit

4.1.4 Miscellaneous assets

4.1.5 Off - balance sheet assets

**4.2 Asset management**

4.2.1 Objectives

4.2.2 Management of banking assets

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Phan Thi Thu Ha (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics University Publishing House. Chapter 3.
2. Mi*s*kin. F.S. (1994). *The Economics of Money. Banking and Financial Markets. Technology and Science Publishing House*. Chapters 9 and 10.
3. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 20.
4. Legal documentations issued by State Bank of Vietnam and related agencies. For examples:

* National Assembly (2010), *Law on Credit Institutions* No. 47/2010/QH12 approved by the Vietnam National Assembly on June 16, 2010.

- State Bank of Vietnam (2014), *Unified Document No.20/VBHN-NHNN unifying Decisions on issuing regulations on lending by credit institutions to clients,* dated May 22, 2014.

- State Bank of Vietnam (2015), *Circular No. 07/2015/TT-NHNN stipulating the bank guarantee,* dated June 25, 2015.

- State Bank of Vietnam (2004), *Decision 1096/2004/QD-NHNN on the issuance of the regulation on factoring activity of credit institutions,* dated September 06, 2004.

- State Bank of Vietnam (2006), *Circular No. 08/2006/TT-NHNN providing guidance on activity of finance leasing syndication of finance leasing companies,* dated October 12, 2006.

- State Bank of Vietnam (2013), *Circular 04/2013/TT-NHNN stipulating the discount of negotiable instruments, other valuable papers by credit institutions, foreign bank branches to their customers,* dated March 1, 2013

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS**:

Phan Thi Thu Ha (2013). National Economics University Publishing House. Chapter 3.

**8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS & OTHER READINGS:**

1. Frederic S.Miskin (1994). *The economics of Money. Banking and Financial Market.* Science and Technics Publishing House. Hanoi
2. Peter S Rose (2001). *Bank Management and Financial Service*. Financial Publishing House. Hanoi
3. Case studies/news on bank management and bank regulations of Vietnam in newspapers, articles, other relevant textbooks, and websites are highly recommended:

-         State Bank of Vietnam. [www.sbv.gov.vn](http://www.sbv.gov.vn/)

-         Deposit Insurance of Vietnam. [www.div.gov.vn](http://www.div.gov.vn/)

-         Banking of England. [www.bankofengland.co.uk](http://www.bankofengland.co.uk/)

-         UK Financial Conduct Authority. [www.fca.org.uk](http://www.fca.org.uk/)

-         British Banking Association. [www.bba.org.uk](http://www.bba.org.uk/)

-         American Banking Association. [www.aba.com](http://www.aba.com/)

-         European Central Bank. [www.ecb.int](http://www.ecb.int/)

-         US Federal Reserve System. [www.federalreserve.gov/](http://www.federalreserve.gov/)

-         US Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. [www.fdic.gov](http://www.fdic.gov/)

-         Bank for International Settlements. [www.bis.org](http://www.bis.org/)

-         Financial Times. [www.ft.com](http://www.ft.com/)

-         Bloomberg. [www.bloomberg.com](http://www.bloomberg.com/)

-         Reuters. [www.reuters.com/](http://www.reuters.com/)

-         The Banker. [www.thebankfer.com](http://www.thebankfer.com/)

-         Eurostat. <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat>

-         The Economist. [www.economist.com](http://www.economist.com/)

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Students are required to attend at least 80% of class hours.

- Fully participating in class discussion and exercises.

- Final exam is delivered in written form.

- Final grade is calculated by the below structure:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No.** | **Criteria** | **Score** | **Weight** | **Score composition** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%A (1) |
| 3 | Mid-term exam | Y | 20% | 20%C (3) |
| 4 | Final exam | Z | 70% | 70%D (4) |
|  | **Weighted score** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | **SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM**  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Public Finance

Code: NHCO1102 Number of Credits: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Public Finance

Office: Building A1 – National Economics University  
Office Hours: Weekdays, 7.30 – 16.30  
Office Telephone:

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Students had to finish the following course before taking this course: Financial and Monetary Theory 1

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Public finance is a core module in banking and finance. The module examines financial activities of the public sector such as public expenditure and public expenditure evaluation, tax and the impact of tax, budget and budget management. It also covers policy options and financial instruments employed by the government to perform its roles and the operations of these tools in Vietnam context. Unlike other basic and specialized modules, the public finance module not only discusses theoretical issues, but also considers specific professional issues and issues related to the policy regime of the government, especially state budget management policies, tax policies, government debt and debt management policies.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The purpose of the module is to provide students with basic knowledge of public finance to further study other specialized subjects such as tax and international tax. It also helps equip students with profound understanding of practical issues in public finance.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: An overview of public finance | 10 | 6 | 4 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Tax theory | 10 | 6 | 4 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3: State budget | 10 | 7 | 3 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Management of the state budget revenues | 7 | 4 | 3 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Management of the state budget expenditures | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **28** | **17** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: AN OVERVIEW OF PUBLIC FINANCE**

The goal of chapter 1 is to provide students with basic knowledge of public finance with great stress on the concept of public finance, contents and coverage of public finance, and characteristics of public finance. In addition, students are expected to obtain a sound understanding of the role of the government in carrying out the functions of the public finance. Upon completion of this chapter, students could identify the importance of public finance in the financial system as well as distinguishing public finance from other financial activities.

* 1. **Common issues of public finance**
     1. Definition of public finance
     2. Contents and coverage of public finance
     3. Characteristics of public finance
     4. Public finance management system

**1.2. Public finance and the role of Government**

1.2.1. Income redistribution and macroeconomic stability

1.2.2. Efficient exploitation and use of public resources

1.2.3. Competition, monopoly and Government intervention

1.2.4. Externalities and Government intervention

1.2.5. Government with the supply and the use of public goods and services

1.2.6. The Government with the supply and use of merit goods

Texts and readings for the chapter:

**-** Joseph E.Stiglitz (1995). *Economics of the public sector*, Science & Technology publishing house.

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi finance publishing house, 2005.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002). *Tax administration* , , Statistics Publishing House.

- Su Dinh Thanh (2009). *Public finance and tax policy analysis,* UEH Publishing house, University of Economics Ho Chi Minh City.

**CHAPTER 2: TAX THEORY**

The purpose of chapter 2 is to provide students with basic knowledge of tax including concepts and characteristics of tax, tax base, tax rates and tax structures, tax classifications, and the effects of tax. Upon completion of this chapter, students can apply the knowledge to assess tax policies in practice.

**2.1. Common issues of tax**2.1.1. Concepts and characteristics  
2.1.2. Tax bases  
2.1.3. Tax rates and tax structures

**2.2. Tax classifications**2.2.1. Based on the nature of resources to finance the budget  
2.2.2. Based on the object of taxation

**2.3. Tax system and nature of an optimal tax system**2.3.1. Tax system  
2.3.2. Nature of an optimal tax system  
 2.3.2.1. Economic efficiency  
 2.3.2.2. The cost of tax administration  
 2.3.2.3. Flexibility  
 2.3.2.4. Equity

**2.4. Analysis of tax impact**

2.4.1. The impacts of tax in the competitive market  
2.4.2. The impacts of tax in the monopoly market

Texts and readings for the chapter:

**-** Joseph E.Stiglitz (1995). *Economics of the public sector*. Science & Technology publishing house.

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi Finance Publishing house, 2005.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002). *Tax administration*, Statistics Publishing House.

- Su Dinh Thanh (2009). *Public finance and tax policy analysis,* UEH Publishing house, University of Economics Ho Chi Minh City.

**CHAPTER 3: STATE BUDGET**

The goal of chapter 3 is to equip students with the general theory of the state budget. Upon completion of this chapter, students will have an overview of the nature and roles of the state budget, the coverage of state budget revenues and expenditures, state budget index, budget year and budget cycle.

**3.1. Economic nature and roles of the state budget**

3.1.1. Definition and economic nature of the state budget

3.1.2. The roles of the state budget

**3.2. State budget revenues**

3.2.1. Definition and characteristics of state budget revenues

3.2.2. Contents of state budget revenues

**3.3. State budget expenditures**

3.3.1. Definition and characteristics of state budget expenditures

3.3.2. Contents of state budget expenditures

**3.4. State budget index**

3.4.1. Definition and requirements of the state budget index

3.4.2. Contents of the state budget index

**3.5. Management of the state budget**

3.5.1. Definition and contents of state budget management

3.5.2. Budget year and budget cycle

Texts and readings for the chapter:

**-** Joseph E.Stiglitz (1995). *Economics of the public sector*, Science & Technology publishing house.

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi finance publishing house, 2005.

- Su Dinh Thanh (2009). *Public finance and tax policy analysis,* UEH Publishing house, University of Economics Ho Chi Minh City.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002), *Tax administration*, Statistics Publishing House.

**CHAPTER 4: MANAGEMENT OF STATE BUDGET REVENUES**

The purpose of chapter 4 is to help students understand the importance of state budget revenue management. Upon completion of this chapter, students will have an overview of the structure of state budget revenues, analyze changes in the proportion of revenues, grasp the content and process of state revenues management.

**4.1. Structure of state budget revenues**

4.1.1. Definition and indicators reflecting the structure of state budget revenues

4.1.2. Factors determining the structure of state budget revenues

**4.2. State revenues budgeting**

4.2.1. Requirements of state revenues budgeting

4.2.2. The process of state revenues budgeting

**4.3. State revenues budgeting practice**

4.3.1. Forms of mobilization of revenues to the state budget

4.3.1.1. Revenues in Vietnamese dong

4.3.1.2. Revenues in foreign currency

4.3.1.3. Revenues in goods, workdays

4.3.2. Reimbursement of state budget revenues

4.3.2.1. Processes and procedures for reimbursement of non-compensatory charges

4.3.2.2. Processes and procedures for reimbursement of compensatory charges

**4.4. State revenues settlement**

4.4.1. Producing state budget revenue settlement reports

4.4.2. Approval for the state budget revenue settlement reports

Texts and readings for the chapter:

- State Budget Law

- Fiscal balance retrieved from: [http://www.mof.gov.vn](http://www.mof.gov.vn/)

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi Finance Publishing House, 2005.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002), *Tax administration*, Statistics Publishing House.

**HAPTER 5: MANAGEMENT OF STATE BUDGET EXPENDITURES**

The goal of chapter 5 is to help students grasp the important role of the state budget expenditure management. Upon completion of this chapter, students could have an overview of the structure of state budget expenditures, and analyze changes in the proportion of expenditures; grasp the contents and process of state expenditure management.

**5.1. Structure of state budget expenditure**

5.1.1. Definition and indicators reflecting the structure of state budget expenditure

5.1.2. Factors determining the structure of state budget expenditure

**5.2. Management of state budget recurrent expenditure**

5.2.1. Contents of state budget recurrent expenditure

5.2.2. Management of state budget recurrent expenditure

5.2.2.1. Establishing recurrent expenditure limits

5.2.2.2. Budgeting for recurrent expenditure

5.2.2.3. Performing recurrent expenditure budget

5.2.2.4. Settling recurrent expenditure

**5.3. Management of state budget development expenditures**

5.3.1. Characteristics and contents of state budget development expenditures

5.3.2. Management of state budget development expenditures

**5.4. Management of other expenditures**

5.4.1. Management of expenditure for aids and debt obligations

5.4.2. Management of additional expenditure for financial reserves

5.4.3. Management of other expenditures

Texts and readings for the chapter:

- State Budget Law

- Fiscal balance retrieved from [http://www.mof.gov.vn](http://www.mof.gov.vn/)

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi Finance Publishing House, 2005.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002), *Tax administration*, Statistics Publishing House.

- Su Dinh Thanh (2009), *Public finance and tax policy analysis,* UEH Publishing house, University of Economics Ho Chi Minh City.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

- Public Finance Textbook

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2006), *Public Finance questions and exercises*, Statistics Publishing House.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

**-** Joseph E.Stiglitz (1995), *Economics of the public sector*, Science & Technology publishing house.

- Public financial management textbook, Hanoi finance publishing house, 2005.

- Nguyen Thi Bat (2002), *Tax administration*, Statistics Publishing House

- Su Dinh Thanh (2009), *Public finance and tax policy analysis,* UEH Publishing house, University of Economics Ho Chi Minh City..

- State Budget Law

- Fiscal balance retrieved from the website [http://www.mof.gov.vn](http://www.mof.gov.vn/)

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students are eligible for the contest if:

- Attending at least 75% of classroom time.

- Obtaining at least 5 points (out of 10) in the periodic tests.

Besides:

- Participating fully in the discussions and homework.

- Mode of final exam: Essay contest

- Grade calculation for the module:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Scores** | **Proportion** | **Total score** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Mid-term test | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final examination | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**SECURITIES MARKET 1 SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** SECURITIES MARKET

Code: **NHCK1102** Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** SECURITIES DEPARTMENT

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University, 207 Giai Phong, Hanoi  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm  
**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Before taking this course, students have to complete Monetary Theory 1 course.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Securities market 1 is a compulsory course in the curriculum for Bachelor of Banking and Finance, including specialization of Corporate Finance, Commercial Bank, International Finance, Public Finance, Securities Market, Insurance and Acturies.

The course consists of 6 chapters with the basic contents of securities and securities market. The module provides students the basic knowledge of the securities market, such as: concepts, characteristics, roles and structures of the securities market; securities and valuation of securities; issuance and trading of securities; information system in the securities market. During the course, students will do exercises, analyse case studies that will be mentioned at the end of each chapter. Moreover, student will have chances to practice real case studies in the securities market of Vietnam.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The objectives of the course are:

- To understand the basic knowledge on securities and securities market such as: roles, functions of securities market in financial market; structure of securities market;

- To understand characteristics of various securities; to know how the securities are issued and valued;

- To know how the securities are traded in the Stock exchange and in the OTC;

- To understand operation mechanism of the Stock Exchange, the Over the Counter market, mechanism of trading, management and supervision as well.

- To understand the efficient market hypothesis and know to how effectively analyse the securities market;

- To understand the information system in the securities market, requirements and obligation to provide information of entities that are obliged to disclose their information such as listed companies, securities firms, stock exchanges ...

- To apply these knowledge in solving and analyzing the real case studies in securities market of Vietnam

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1 | Chapter 1. Overview of Securities market | 8 | 7 | 1 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2. Securities and valuation | 10 | 7 | 3 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3. Securities Issuance | 6 | 5 | 1 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4. Stock exchanges | 9 | 7 | 2 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5. Over the Counter Market | 6 | 5 | 1 |  |
| 6 | Chapter 6. Information system in the securities market | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
|  |  | **45** | **34** | **11** |  |

**CHAPTER 1– OVERVIEW OF SECURITIES MARKET**

This Chapter will introduce to learners basic contents of the securities market; position and roles of the securities market in financial market structure; the basic structure of the securities market; basic principles of securities market operation; participants in the market; efficient market hypothesis and testing the efficient market hypothesis in some specific securities markets.

* 1. **The formation and development of securities market**
  2. **Definition, classification and principles of securities market operation**
     1. Definition and types of securities market
     2. Basic principles of securities markets operation
  3. **Participants in the securities market**

1.3.1. Issuers

1.3.2. Investors

1.3.3. Intermediaries

1.3.4. Authority agency

1.3.5. Other supporting organizations

* 1. **Roles of securities market**

1.4.1. For the economy and Government

1.4.2. For issuers

1.4.3. For investors

**1.5. The efficient market hypothesis**

1.5.1. The expectation theory

1.5.2. The efficient market hypothesis

1.5.3. Empritical test

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Federic S. Minshkin. 2001. *The Economics of Money. Banking and Financial Markets (Tiền tệ. ngân hàng và thị trường tài chính).* Science and Technology Publisher;
* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán).* Statistical Publisher. Chapter 1
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher. Chapter 1 and 2
* Tran Dang Kham. 2001. Promoting the participation of financial intermediaries in the process of development of Vietnam securities market (Thúc đẩy sự tham gia của các trung gian tài chính trong quá trình phát triển thị trường chứng khoán Việt Nam). Ph.D. thesis
* Trinh Mai Van. 2010. Developing the bond market in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu ở Việt Nam). Ph.D. thesis. National Economics University
* Tran Dang Kham. 2010. *Developing the bond market of conglomerates in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu tập đoàn kinh tế tại Việt Nam)*. Science research
* Le Thi Huong Lan. 2008. *Developing activities of the security companies in Vietnam (Phát triển hoạt động của các CTCK ở Việt Nam)*. Ph.D. thesis. National Economics University

**CHAPTER 2– SECURITIES AND VALUATION**

This Chapter will introduce learners concepts, classification of securities and detail some typical securities such as preferred stock, common stock, bond and derivatives. Besides, students are introduced the methods and practiced the valuation of stock and bond.

**2.1 An Overview of securities**

2.1.1. Definition

2.1.2. Types of securities

2.1.3. The key features of securities

**2.2 Some typical securities**

2.2.1. Bond and features

2.2.2. Preferred stock and features

2.2.3. Common stock and features

2.2.4. Derivatives

**2.3. Bond valuation**

2.3.1. The concepts of bond valuation

2.3.2. The process of bond valuation

2.3.3. Relationships in bond valuation

**2.4. Stock valuation**

2.4.1. Preferred stock valuation

2.4.2. Common stock valuation – Dividend discounted model

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Statistical Publisher. Chapter 2.
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher. Chapter 3. 4. 5. 6.
* Trinh Mai Van. 2010. *Developing the bond market in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu ở Việt Nam).* Ph.D. thesis. National Economics University

**CHAPTER 3–SECURITIES ISSUANCE**

This Chapter will introduce to learners securities issuance methods of entities in the market such as the Government, local authorities and businesses, practices of issuing securities in Vietnam as well.

**3.1. An overview of the securities issuance**

3.1.1. Definition

3.1.2. The participants

3.1.3. Purposes

**3.2. The issuance methods of Government bond**

3.2.1. Auction

3.2.2. Underwriting

3.2.3. Issuing agency

3.2.4. Direct Issuance to public

**3.3. The issuance methods of Corporate bond**

3.3.1. Private placements

3.3.2. Public Issues

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook*. National Economics University. Statistical Publishing House. Chapter 2.
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher. Chapter 3. 4. 5. 6.
* Le Hoang Nga. 2009. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán).* Finance Publisher. Chapter 2

**CHAPTER 4– STOCK EXCHANGES**

This Chapter will introduce to learners organization models, members of the Stock Exchanges, listed securities on the Stock exchange. In particular, the securities trading system on the Stock Exchange, investors’ manners of buying and selling securities, methods to determine price of securities on the Stock Exchange are described in details.

**4.1. An overview of the Stock Exchanges**

4.1.1. Definition

4.1.2. Operation principles of the Stock Exchanges

4.1.3. Organization models

**4.2. Members of the Stock Exchange**

4.2.1. Definition and types of members

4.2.2. Standard and procedures for admitting members

4.2.3. Rights and obligations of members

**4.3. Listing on the Stock Exchange**

4.3.1. An overview of the listing

4.3.2. Listing requirements and process

4.3.3. Listing management

**4.4. Trading on the Stock Exchange**

4.4.1. Methods of trading

4.4.1.1. Manual trading

4.4.1.2. Electronic trading

4.4.2. Order driven system

4.4.2.1. Definition

4.4.2.2. Concepts in trading

4.4.2.3. Types of trading orders

4.4.2.4. Order matching methods

4.4.3. Types of transactions

4.4.3.1 Block trading

4.4.3.2. Odd lot trading

4.4.3.3. Treasury stock trading

4.4.3.4. Margin trading

4.4.3.5. Others

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Statistical Publisher. Chapter 3. 6
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher. 2009. NEU Publishing House. Chapter 1.

**CHAPTER 5– OVER THE COUNTER MARKET**

Chapter 5 introduces learners concepts, characteristics and roles of the OTC market. Market makers in the OTC and how to trade in the market will also be discussed.

**5.1. An overview of the OTC**

5.1.1. Definition, functions and roles of the OTC

5.1.2. Features of the OTC

5.1.3. Members

5.1.4. Models of typical OTC market in the world

**5.2. Market makers in the OTC**

5.2.1. Definition

5.2.2. Advantages and disadvantages of market makers

5.2.3. Roles of market makers

**5.3. Trading in the OTC**

5.3.1. Price – driven system

5.3.2. Types of transactions

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán).* Statistical Publisher. Chapter 4, 6.
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher. Chapter 1.
* Tran Dang Kham. 2010. *Developing the bond market of conglomerates in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu tập đoàn kinh tế tại Việt Nam)*. Science research.

**CHAPTER 6– INFORMATION SYSTEM IN THE SECURITIES MARKET**

This Chapter introduces learners the system of information disclosure in the securities market, in which entities disclose information, the contents and forms of information disclosure and sources of information in the securities market will be discussed in details. Methods of building stock price indexes and a number of typical price indexes of the securities market in some countries will be also introduced to readers. Facts about the information disclosure system, calculation the stock price indexes in Vietnam are also indispensable contents of this chapter.

**6.1 The information disclosure system in the securities market**

6.1.1. Definitions and the necessity of the information disclosure system

6.1.2. The sources of information

6.1.3. Entities disclosing information

**6.2. Stock price indexes**

6.2.1. Definition

6.2.2. Methods of building stock price indexes

6.2.3. The typical stock indexes

**6.3. The information disclosure system and stock price indexes in Vietnam securities market**

6.3.1. The information disclosure system in Vietnam securities market

6.3.2. Stock price indexes in Vietnam securities market

*Texts and readings for the chapter:*

* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Statistical Publisher. Chapter 8;
  + Legal documents related to information disclosure in the Vietnam securities market.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Statistical Publisher.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings**

* Federic S. Minshkin. 2001. *The Economics of Money. Banking and Financial Markets (Tiền tệ. ngân hàng và thị trường tài chính).* Science and Technology Publisher.
* Nguyen Van Nam & Vuong Trong Nghia. 2002. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Statistical Publisher.
* Tran Dang Kham. 2009. *Securities Market – Fundamental Analysis (Thị trường chứng khoán – Phân tích cơ bản). 2nd Edition*. NEU publisher
* Tran Dang Kham. 2001. Promoting the participation of financial intermediaries in the development process of Vietnam stock market (Thúc đẩy sự tham gia của các trung gian tài chính trong quá trình phát triển thị trường chứng khoán Việt Nam). Ph.D. thesis
* Trinh Mai Van. 2010. Developing the bond market in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu ở Việt Nam). Ph.D. thesis. National Economics University
* Tran Dang Kham. 2010. Developing the bond market of conglomerates in Vietnam (Phát triển thị trường trái phiếu tập đoàn kinh tế tại Việt Nam). Science research.
* Le Thi Huong Lan. 2008. Developing activities of the securities companies in Vietnam (Phát triển hoạt động của các CTCK ở Việt Nam). Ph.D. thesis. National Economics University.
* Le Hoang Nga. 2009. *The securities market Textbook (Giáo trình Thị trường chứng khoán)*. Finance Publisher
* Legal documents related to information disclosure in the Vietnam securities market

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Midterm test: 01

- Attendance requirement: at least 80% of classtime

- Final exam: comment and numerical questions

- Grading:

+ Attendance : 10% (integer)

+ Midterm test : 20% (round to the nearest 0.5)

+ Final exam : 70% (round to the nearest 0.5)

Final grade = 10% \* Attendance score + 20% \* midterm test + 70% \* final exam (Final grade: round to the nearest 0.1)

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM |
| **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1.COURSE NAME: Financial Markets and Institutions**

Code**: KHMA3308** Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Department of Macroeconomics

**Office:** Room 803, Building A1, National Economics University

**Office Hours:** Mon – Fri, 8 AM to 5 PM  
**Office Telephone:**

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Before taking this course, students have to complete Micro-economics 1 and 2; Macroeconomics 1 and 2.

**3. COURSE DESCRIPTIONS**

In the course, students are introduced into the basic principles and terminology of banking, finance and investment. The starting point is the study of the organization and operation of a financial institution. The course examines the variety of funding sources and the use of those funds. In this way, the student will be made familiar with the various types of accounts, investment products and loans offered by a bank. It will also discuss the valuation of the various products and the calculation of costs and/or returns. In addition, the course will introduce students into the working of financial markets in which a bank and other financial institutions as well as institutional and retail investors operate. The course will explain stocks and bonds in detail and discuss their valuation. This is illustrated with practical examples and frequent reference to current events, media and numbers so that students can solve concrete financial issues using the correct terminology and formulas.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**:

The main goals of this course are given as:

* Understand and apply fundamental modeling techniques.
* Be able to build an analytical model for most corporate finance decisions: calculate cost of captial, build a proforma balancesheet, model capital structure choice, model lease contract and other models.
* Be able to value company based on their financial data.
* Be able to value bond.

**Learning Objectives**

This course will contribute to the following learning goals: critical and creative thinking, and quantitative reasoning

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1 | **Chapter 1: Financial Markets, Institutions, and Interest Rates** | 10 | 6 | 5 |  |
| 2 | **Chapter 2: Debt and Equity Securities Markets** | 10 | 6 | 5 |  |
| 3 | **Chapter 3: Financial Derivatives** | 15 | 6 | 6 |  |
| 4 | **Chapter 4: Bank Management** | 10 | 6 | 5 |  |
|  | **Total** | 45 | 24 | 21 |  |

**Chapter 1 - Financial Markets, Institutions, and Interest Rates**

**1.**1**. The Role of Financial Markets and Institutions**

1.1.1. Role of financial markets

1.1.2. Securities traded in financial markets

1.1.3. Role of financial institutions

1.1.4. Credit crisis for financial institutions

**1.2. Interest Rate Determination**

1.2.1. Loanable funds theory

1.2.2. Factors that affect interest rates

1.2.3. Forecasting interest rates

**1.3. Interest Rate Structure**

1.3.1. Why debt security yields vary

1.3.2. Explaining actual yield differentials

1.3.3. Estimating the appropriate yield

1.3.4. A closer look at the term structure

1.3.5. Integrating the theories of term structure

**Chapter 2 - Debt and Equity Securities Markets**

**2.1. Money Markets**

2.1.1. Money market securities

2.1.2. Institutional use of money markets

2.1.3. Valuation of money market securities

2.1.4. Globalization of money markets

2.1.5. Point counter-point: Should firms invest in money market securities?

**2.2. Bond Markets**

2.2.1. Background on bonds

2.2.2. Treasury and federal agency bonds

2.2.3. Municipal bonds

2.2.4. Corporate bonds

2.2.5. Globalization of bond

2.2.6. Other types of long-term debt securities

2.2.7. Point counter-point: Should Financial institutions invest in junk bonds?

**2.3. Stock Offerings and Investor Monitoring**

2.3.1. Private equity

2.3.2. Public equity

2.3.4. Initial public offerings

2.3.5. Stock offerings and repurchases

2.3.6. Stock exchanges

2.3.7. Monitoring publicly traded companies

2.3.8. Market for corporate control

2.3.9. Globalization of stock markets

**2.4. Market Microstructure and Strategies**

2.4.1. Stock market transactions

2.4.2. How stock transactions are executed

2.4.3. Regulation of stock trading

2.4.4. Trading international stocks

**Chapter 3 - Financial Derivatives**

**3.1. Financial Futures Markets**

3.1.1. Background on financial futures

3.1.2. Interest rate futures contracts

3.1.3. Stock index futures

3.1.4. Single stock futures

3.1.5. Risk of trading futures contracts

3.1.6. Globalization of futures markets

**3.2. Options Markets**

3.2.1. Background on options

3.2.2. Determinants of stock option premiums

3.2.3. Speculating with stock options

**3.3. Options Markets**

3.3.1. Hedging with stock options

3.3.2. Options on ETFs and stock indexes

3.3.3. Options on futures contracts

3.3.4. Options as executive compensation

3.3.5. Globalization of options markets

**Chapter 4: Bank Management**

**4.1. Commercial Bank Operations**

4.1.1. Background on commercial banks

4.1.2. Bank sources of funds

4.1.3. Uses of funds by banks

4.1.4. Off-balance sheet activities

4.1.5. International banking

**4.2. Bank Management**

4.2.1. Bank goals, strategy, and governance

4.2.2. Managing liquidity

4.2.3. Managing interest rate risk

4.2.4. Managing credit risk

4.2.5. Managing market risk

4.2.6. Integrated bank management

4.2.7. Managing risk of international operations

**4.3. Mutual Fund Operations**

4.3.1. Background on mutual funds

4.3.2. Mutual fund categories

4.3.3. Performance of mutual funds

4.3.4. Money market funds

4.3.5. Other types of funds

**4.4. Thrift Operations**

4.4.1. Background on savings institutions

4.4.2. Sources and uses of funds

4.4.3. Credit Unions

**4.5. Finance Operations**

4.5.1. Types of finance companies

4.5.2. Sources and uses of funds

**4.6. Securities Operations**

Functions of securities firms

**4.7. Insurance and Pension Fund Operations**

4.7.1.Background  
4.7.2. Life insurance operations

4.7.3. Other types of insurance operations

4.7.4. Background on pension funds

4.7.5. Pension fund management

**7. TEXTBOOK**

# Madura, Jeff, 2012, Financial Institutions and Markets, 10th edition, South-Western Cengage Learning. (ISBN13 978-0-538-48217-2)

### 8. Recommended Resources

**9. ASSESSMENT**

Course assessment will be based on attendance (10%), a midterm test/presentation (20%) and a final exam (70%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **----------------------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **--------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Corporate Finance

Code: NHTC1104 Number of credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** *Department of Corporate Finance*

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University

**Office Hours:** 08.30am on Monday, Wednesday, Friday

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Theory of Money and Finance, Financial Accounting

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Corporate Finance Course covers basic knowledge about corporate finance including: sources of capital, ways to raise capital, capital structure and cost of capital, long-term investment decisions, businessfinancial analysis, short-term financial planning, cash inflow and outflow management, commercial credit analysis, the impact of tax on financial activities .

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVE:**

This course equips student with skills and basic knowledge about corporate finance, financial analysis, evaluation of financial situation, solutions for financial problems in business, right sources of finance for business. The details are as follows.

***Theory:***

* Understanding the basic knowledge of corporate finance, being able to differentiate between types of firms, and analyzing basic financial situations of a company.
* Understanding principles of corporate finance and business goals.
* Understanding definitions and characteristics of revenue, cost, and profit
* Understanding definitions and characteristics of financial statements, key features in financial statements and how to prepare financial statements.
* Understanding characteristics, calculation methods and impacts of tax (import tax, value added tax, special consumption tax, and corporate income tax) on business,
* Understanding how to raise capital, including how to raise debt and how to raise equity.

***Practice:***

Applying theory to practice in order to analyze and evaluate financial situations regarding revenue, cost, profit and tax impacts.- Interpreting and creating financial statements

Being able to evaluate and to choose right sources of finance for business: debt and equity capital

**6. COURSE CONTENT**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Chapter** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |  |
| 1 | Introduction to Corporate finance | 6 | 6 | 0 |  |
| 2 | Revenue, cost and profit management of company | 12 | 8 | 4 |  |
| 3 | Financial statements | 15 | 10 | 5 |  |
| 4 | Capital of company | 12 | 8 | 4 |  |
|  |  | 45 | 32 | 13 |  |

|  |
| --- |
| **Chapter 1: Introduction to Corporate finance**  Chapter 1 focuses on the fundamentals of corporate financial management, including types of firms, corporate finance, content and objectivesof corporate financial management, and roles of corporate financial management and principles of corporate financial management. After completing this chapter, students will be able tounderstand basic knowledge about basic activities of corporate financial management. |
| **1.1. Corporate** |
| 1.1.1 Definition and classification |
| 1.1.2 Business environment |
| **1.2. Definition of corporate finance** |
| **1.3. Corporate finance basis and cash flows** |
| **1.4. Fundamentals of corporate financial management** |
| **1.5. Goalsof corporate financial management** |
| **1.6. Roles of corporate financial management** |
| **1.7. Principles of Corporate financial management** |
| **1.8. Financial management system**  **Reference:**   * *PGS. TS. Lưu Thị Hương (2005), Giáo trình Tài chính doanh nghiệp, Publishing House of National Economics University* * *Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers and Alan J. Marcus (2011), Fundamentals of Corporate Finance, Seventh Edition, McGraw-Fill/Irwin Series in Finance, Insurance and Real Estate,* * *Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield Jeffrey F. Jaffe (2003), Corporate Finance, The McGraw-Hill Companies* * *Eugene F. Brigham, Joel F. Houston (2008), Fundamentals of Financial Management, Twelfth Edition, South-Western Cengage Learning* * *Eugene F. Brigham and Phillip R. Daves (2007), Intermediate Financial Management, Ninth Edition, Thomson South-Western* |
| **Chapter 2: Revenue, Expense and profit management**  Chapter 2 introduces basic concepts of revenue, expense, and profit. In addition, some types of taxes which create impact on business are also discussed such as corporate income tax, value added taxes, special consumption taxes. |
| **2.1. Business expenses** |
| 2.1.1 Expense of production and expense of consumption |
| 2.1.2 Operating expense |
| 2.1.3 Financial expense and other expense |
| **2.2. Revenue** |
| 2.2.1 Production consumption and Sales of firms |
| 2.2.2 Revenue |
| **2.3. Profit** |
| 2.3.1 Definition |
| 2.3.2 Profit distribution |
| **2.4 Taxes** |
| 2.4.1 Value added taxes |
| 2.4.2 Special consumption taxes |
| 2.4.3 Corporate income taxes |
| **2.4.4 Others**  **Reference:**   * *PGS. TS. Lưu Thị Hương (2005), Giáo trình Tài chính doanh nghiệp,* Publishing House of National Economics University * *Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers and Alan J. Marcus (2011), Fundamentals of Corporate Finance, Seventh Edition, McGraw-Fill/Irwin Series in Finance, Insurance and Real Estate,* * *Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield Jeffrey F. Jaffe (2003), Corporate Finance, The McGraw-Hill Companies* * *Eugene F. Brigham, Joel F. Houston (2008), Fundamentals of Financial Management, Twelfth Edition, South-Western Cengage Learning* * *Eugene F. Brigham and Phillip R. Daves (2007), Intermediate Financial Management, Ninth Edition, Thomson South-Western* |
| **Chapter 3: Financial statements**  Chapter 3 focuses on business financial statements , including balance sheet, income statement and cash flow statement. Furthermore, methods of financial statementanalysis will be introduced to providestudents withbasic knowledge in order to interpret and analyze financial statements. |
| **3.1 Introduction to financial statements**  3.1.1. Definition  3.1.2. Roles of financial statements  **3.2. Content and structure of financial statements**  3.2.1. Balance sheet  3.2.2. Income statement  3.2.3. Cash flow statement  3.2.4. Financial note |
| **Reference:**   * *PGS. TS. Lưu Thị Hương (2005), Giáo trình Tài chính doanh nghiệp,* Publishing House of National Economics University * *Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers and Alan J. Marcus (2011), Fundamentals of Corporate Finance, Seventh Edition, McGraw-Fill/Irwin Series in Finance, Insurance and Real Estate, Chương I* * *Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield Jeffrey F. Jaffe (2003), Corporate Finance, The McGraw-Hill Companies* * *Eugene F. Brigham, Joel F. Houston (2008), Fundamentals of Financial Management, Twelfth Edition, South-Western Cengage Learning* * *Eugene F. Brigham and Phillip R. Daves (2007), Intermediate Financial Management, Ninth Edition, Thomson South-Western* * *Martin Fridson và Fernando Alvarez (2002), Financial Statement Analysis: A Practitioner’s Guide, Third Edition, Wiley Finance* * *Chrles H. Gibson (2011), Financial Reporting and Analysis: Using Financial Accounting Information, The University of Toledo, Emeritus* |
| **Chapter 4: Capital of company**  Chapter 4 introduces methods for raising capital, consisting of the two main methods: raising equity and raising debt. In addition, the cost of capital is also discussed in order to determine the optimal capital structure. |
| **4.1. Overview** |
| **4.2. Sources of capital and methods to raise capital** |
| 4.2.1 Equity |
| 4.2.2 Debt |
| **Reference:**   * *PGS. TS. Lưu Thị Hương (2005), Giáo trình Tài chính doanh nghiệp,* Publishing House of National Economics University * *Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers and Alan J. Marcus (2011), Fundamentals of Corporate Finance, Seventh Edition, McGraw-Fill/Irwin Series in Finance, Insurance and Real Estate.* * *Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield Jeffrey F. Jaffe (2003), Corporate Finance, The McGraw-Hill Companies* * *Eugene F. Brigham, Joel F. Houston (2008), Fundamentals of Financial Management, Twelfth Edition, South-Western Cengage Learning* * *Eugene F. Brigham and Phillip R. Daves (2007), Intermediate Financial Management, Ninth Edition, Thomson South-Western* * *Martin Fridson và Fernando Alvarez (2002), Financial Statement Analysis: A Practitioner’s Guide, Third Edition, Wiley Finance* * *Chrles H. Gibson (2011), Financial Reporting and Analysis: Using Financial Accounting Information, The University of Toledo, Emeritus* |

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS:**

PGS. TS. Lưu Thị Hương (2005), *Giáo trình Tài chính doanh nghiệp*, Publishing House of National Economics University

**8. RECOMMENDED TEXTS & OTHER READINGS:**

* *Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers and Alan J. Marcus (2011), Fundamentals of Corporate Finance, Seventh Edition, McGraw-Fill/Irwin Series in Finance, Insurance and Real Estate.*
* *Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield Jeffrey F. Jaffe (2003), Corporate Finance, The McGraw-Hill Companies*
* *Eugene F. Brigham, Joel F. Houston (2008), Fundamentals of Financial Management, Twelfth Edition, South-Western Cengage Learning*
* *Eugene F. Brigham and Phillip R. Daves (2007), Intermediate Financial Management, Ninth Edition, Thomson South-Western*

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

* Required condition to take the final exam:
* Absent rate is lower than 20% or equivalent
* Midterm test is higher than 5 or equivalent
* Other requirement:
* Attend discussion day
* Final exam: essay questions
* Grading policy:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Content** | **Grade** | **Weight** | **Weighted grade** |
| 1 | Attention grade | W | 10% | 10%W (1) |
| 2 | First test grade | X | 10% | 10%X (2) |
| 3 | Second test grade | Y | 20% | 20%Y (3) |
| 4 | Final test grade | Z | 60% | 60%Z (4) |
|  | **Overall grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)+(4)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Financial Econometrics

Code: KHMA3308 Number of Credits: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Departments of Microeconomics

Office: Room 808, Building A1, National Economics University  
Office Hours: Weekdays, 7.30 – 16.30

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Students had to finish the following courses before taking this course:

Microeconomics 1 & 2 ; Macroeconomics 1& 2 ; Econometrics ; Statistics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

Financial Econometrics is a two semester course taught to the third year students of the Financial Economics undergraduate programme. The syllabus here is for the first part of the course, hereby named Financial Econometrics 1.

Financial econometrics is the intersection of statistical techniques and finance. Financial econometrics provides a set of tools that are useful for modeling financial data and testing beliefs about how markets work and prices are formed. Conversely, new techniques in analyzing financial data can lead to empirical facts inconsistent with existing theories, begging for new models or investment strategies.

We begin with models of time varying expected returns which are useful in formulating expected returns. A casual follower of financial asset prices quickly notices prolonged periods of high volatility followed by more tranquil periods. We next develop several modeling tools that allow us to forecast or predict risk, or volatility, when risk is changing through time. The financial crisis highlighted contagion or the fact that returns on assets tend to be more highly correlated in market downturns. We introduce factor models as well as some more recent modeling innovations that allow for the covariance between assets to change through time – possibly increasing in market downturns. Some market prices must satisfy long run relationships. For example, the price of homes and household income must satisfy a long-run relationship in that average home prices cannot be too high relative to incomes. We introduce a simple statistical model that can account for this type of relationship. Finally, we will discuss models for within day price dynamics, or high-frequency financial data.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The course is designed to introduce the econometrics tools most used in finance and to gain understanding of the sources and characteristics of financial data as well as current and classic applications.

Upon completion of the course students will be able to:

• Use event-study methodology in applied research

• Test the standard asset pricing models

• Investigate market interdependence (in the mean and variance equations)

• Estimate non-linear models

• Forecast financial data using high-level econometric techniques and measure their effectiveness.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | CHAPTER 1: FINANCIAL DATA | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
| 2 | CHAPTER 2: EVENT-STUDY METHODOLOGY | 7 | 3 | 4 |  |
| 3 | CHAPTER 3: TESTING RETURN PREDICTABILITY | 4 | 2 | 2 |  |
| 4 | CHAPTER 4: GARCH | 4 | 2 | 2 |  |
| 5 | CHAPTER 5: ASYMMETRIC GARCH EFFECTS | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 6 | CHAPTER 6: TESTING MARKET INTERDEPENDENCE | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 7 | CHAPTER 7: TESTING ASSET PRICING MODELS: FAMA-MACBETH REGRESSIONS | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 8 | CHAPTER 8: TESTING ASSET PRICING MODELS: GMM | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 9 | CHAPTER 9: INTRODUCTION TO NON-LINEAR ECONOMETRIC MODELS | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
| 10 | CHAPTER 10: MARKOV SWITCHING MODEL (TIME PERMITTING) | 4 | 3 | 1 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **28** | **17** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: FINANCIAL DATA**

Stylized facts of the financial markets data, major characteristics and puzzles, sources and types of data, links to discussed time series models.

Reading:

* CLM: Ch. 1
* RT: Ch. 1

**CHAPTER 2: EVENT-STUDY METHODOLOGY**

*Abnormal returns, tests on abnormal returns, cross-sectional approach.*

Reading:

* CLM: Сh. 4
* Boehmer, E., Musumeci, J. and A. Poulsen, 1991, Event-Study Methodology under Conditions of Event-Induced Variance, Journal of Financial Economics 30, 253-272.
* Fama, E., Fisher, L., Jensen, M. and R. Roll, 1969, The Adjustment of Stock Prices to New Information, International Economic Review 10, 1-21.
* Prabhala, N., 1997, Conditional Methods in Event Studies and an Equilibrium Justification for Standard Event-Study Procedures, Review of Financial Studies 10, 1-38.

**CHAPTER 3: TESTING RETURN PREDICTABILITY**

*Technical trading rules, measures of return predictability, review of test of forecasting power and bootstrap.*

Reading:

* CLM: Ch. 2-3
* Lo, A., 1991, "Long-Term Memory in Stock Market Prices," Econometrica 59, 1279-1313.
* Lo, A. and C. MacKinlay, 1988, "Stock Market Prices Do Not Follow Random Walks: Evidence from a Simple Specification Test," Review of Financial Studies 1, 41-66.
* Bossaerts, P., and P. Hillion, 1999, Implementing Statistical Criteria to Select Return Forecasting Models: What Do We Learn? Review of Financial Studies 12, 405-428.
* Fama, E. and K. French, 1988, Dividend Yields and Expected Stock Returns, Journal of Financial Economics 22, 3-26.
* Diebold, F. X. and Lopez, J. A.: 1996, Forecast evaluation and combination, in G. Maddala and C. Rao (eds), The Handbook of Statistics, Vol. 14, Elsevier North Holland.
* Sullivan, R., Timmermann, A. and White, H.: 1999, Data-snooping, technical trading rule performance, and the bootstrap, Journal of Finance 54, 1647–1691.
* Patton, A. and Timmermann, A.: 2005, Properties of optimal forecasts under asymmetric loss and nonlinearity, forthcoming in Journal of Econometrics.
* White, H.: 2000, A reality check for data snooping, Econometrica 68, 1097–1126.

**CHAPTER 4: GARCH**

*GARCH, IGARCH in risk management, GARCH-M.*

Reading:

* Engle, R. F.: 1982, Autoregressive conditional heteroscedasticity with estimates of the variance of United Kingdom inflation, Econometrica 50, 987–1008.
* Bollerslev, T.: 1986, Generalized autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity, Journal of Econometrics 31, 307–327.
* Engle, R. F., Lilien, D. M. and Robins, R. P.: 1987, Estimating time varying risk premia in the term structure: The arch-m model, Econometrica 55, 391–407.
* Engle, R.F., Patton, A., 2001, What good is a volatility model?, Quantative Finance 1, 237-245

**CHAPTER 5: ASYMMETRIC GARCH EFFECTS**

*Tests on GARCH asymmetry, EGARCH, TGARCH.*

Reading:

* Glosten, L. R., Jaganathan R., and Runkle D. E. (1993). On the relation between the expected value and the volatility of nominal excess return on stocks. Journal of Finance 48, 1779-1801.
* Zakoian, J. M. (1994). Threshold heteroscedastic models. Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control 18, 931-955
* Nelson, D. B. (1991). Conditional heteroscedasticity in asset returns: A new approach. Econometrica 59, 347-370.
* Wooldridge, J. M.: 1990, A unified approach to robust, regression-based specification tests, Econometric Theory 6, 17–43.
* Andersen, T. G. and Bollerslev, T.: 1998, Answering the skeptics: Yes, standard volatility models do provide accurate forecasts, International Economic Review 39(4), 885–905.
* Lunde, A. and Hansen, P. R.: 2001, A forecast comparison of volatility models: Does anything beat a garch(1,1)?, Working Papers 2001-04, Brown University, Department of Economics.

**CHAPTER 6: TESTING MARKET INTERDEPENDENCE**

*Review of VAR/VECM models, Granger causality, multivariate GARCH.*

Reading:

* RT: Ch. 8, 10
* WE: Ch. 5
* Cha, B., Oh, S., The relationship between developed equity markets and the Pacific Basin's emerging equity markets, International Review of Economics & Finance, 2000, vol. 9, issue 4, pages 299-322
* Dwyer, G. P. Jr., Locke, P., and Yu, W. (1996). Index arbitrage and nonlinear dynamics between S&P 500 futures and cash, Review of Financial Studies 9, 301- 322.
* Engle, R. and Kroner, K. F.: 1995, Multivariate simultaneous generalized arch, Econometric Theory 11, 122–150.
* Kroner, K. and Ng, V.: 1998, Modeling asymmetric co-movements of asset returns, Review of Financial Studies 11(3), 817–844.
* Lucey B. M., Voronkova, S., Russian equity market linkages before and after the 1998 crisis: Evidence from stochastic and regime-switching cointegration tests, Journal of International Money and Finance, Volume 27, Issue 8, December 2008, Pages 1303-1324

**CHAPTER 7: TESTING ASSET PRICING MODELS: FAMA-MACBETH REGRESSIONS**

*Fama-MacBeth procedure, basic Fama-McBeth regressions, Shanken correction, GRS test, GMM approach.*

Reading:

* CLM: Сh. 5-6
* RT: Сh. 9
* JC: Сh. 12, 14
* Fama, E. and MacBeth, J. D.: 1973, Risk, return, and equilibrium: Empirical tests, The Journal of Political Economy 81, 607–636.
* Shanken, J.: 1992, On the estimation of beta-pricing models, The Review of Financial Studies 5, 1–33.
* Jagannathan, R. and Wang, Z.: 1996, The conditional CAPM and the crosssection of expected returns, The Journal of Finance 51, 3–53.
* Jagannathan, R. and Wang, Z.: 1998a, Asymptotic theory for estimating betapricing models using cross sectional regression, The Journal of Finance 53(4), 1285–1309.
* Jagannathan, R. and Wang, Z.: 1998b, A note on the asymptotic covariance in Fama-Macbeth regression, The Journal of Finance 53(2), 799–801.

**CHAPTER 8: TESTING ASSET PRICING MODELS: GMM**

*Review of stochastic discount models, factor-based models, GMM estimator.*

Reading:

* JC: Сh. 10-11, 13, 15-16
* Hansen, L. P.: 1982, Large sample properties of generalized method of moments estimators, Econometrica 50(4), 1029–1054.
* Hansen, L. P. and Singleton, K. J.: 1982, Generalized instrumental variables estimation of nonlinear rational expectations models, Econometrica 50(5), 1269– 1286.
* Hansen, L. P. and Singleton, K. J.: 1983a, Generalized instrumental variables estimation of nonlinear rational expectations models: Errata, Econometrica 52(1), 267–268.
* Hansen, L. P. and Jaganathan, R.: 1997, Assessing specification errors in stochastic discount factor models. The Journal of Finance 52, 557-590.

**CHAPTER 9: INTRODUCTION TO NON-LINEAR ECONOMETRIC MODELS**

*Bilinear models, piecewise linear models, TAR, STAR, SETAR and their application.*

Reading:

* CLM: Ch.12
* RT: Ch. 4, 10

**CHAPTER 10: MARKOV SWITCHING MODEL (TIME PERMITTING)**

*Formulation of Markov switching model, properties, estimation, filtered and smoothed probabilities.*

Reading:

* RT: Ch. 4, 10
* Gray, S. F., 1996, Modeling the conditional distribution of interest rates as a regime switching process. Journal of Financial Economics 42, 27-62.
* McCullogh, R. E., and Tsay, R.S. 1994, Statistical analysis of economic time series via Markov switching models. Journal of Time Series Analysis 15, 523- 539.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

* John Campbell, Andrew Lo, Archie MacKinlay (1997). The Econometrics of Financial Markets, Princeton University Press. (***CLM***)

### Ruey S. Tsay (2002). Analysis of Financial Time Series. (*RT*)

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* Chris Brooks (2002). Introductory econometrics for finance, Cambridge University Press. (***CB***)
* John H. Cochrane (2005). Asset Pricing, Princeton University Press. (***JC***)
* Walter Enders (2003). Applied econometric time series, Wiley. (***WE***)
* Hamilton, J. (1994), Time Series Analysis, Princeton University Press, Princeton. (***JH***)

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students are eligible for the final exam if:

- Attending at least 75% of classroom time.

- Obtaining at least 5 points (out of 10) in the periodic tests.

Besides:

- Participating fully in the discussions and homework.

- Mode of final exam: Essay exam

- Grade calculation for the module:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Scores** | **Proportion** | **Total score** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Mid-term test | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final examination | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Models of Financial Asset Pricing

Code: KHMI3305 Number of Credits: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Departments of Microeconomics

Office: Room 808, Building A1, National Economics University  
Office Hours: Weekdays, 7.30 – 16.30  
Office Telephone:

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Students had to finish the following courses before taking this course:

Microeconomics 1 & 2

Macroeconomics 1& 2

Econometrics

Statistics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course offers a comprehensive overview of the classic and the current research in theoretical asset pricing. Asset pricing is developed around the concept of a state-price deflator which relates the price of any asset to its future (risky) dividends and thus incorporates how to adjust for both time and risk in asset valuation. The willingness of any utility-maximizing investor to shift consumption over time defines a state-price deflator which provides a link between optimal consumption and asset prices that leads to the Consumption-based Capital Asset Pricing Model (CCAPM). A simple version of the CCAPM cannot explain various stylized asset pricing facts, but these asset pricing “puzzles” can be resolved by a number of recent extensions involving habit formation, recursive utility, multiple consumption goods, and long-run consumption risks. Other valuation techniques and modelling approaches (such as factor models, term structure models, risk-neutral valuation, and option pricing models) are explained and related to state-price deflators**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The course is designed to introduce the econometrics tools most used in finance and to gain understanding of the sources and characteristics of financial data as well as current and classic applications.

Upon completion of the course students will be able to:

• Use event-study methodology in applied research

• Test the standard asset pricing models

• Investigate market interdependence (in the mean and variance equations)

• Estimate non-linear models

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: Introduction and Overview | 3 | 3 |  |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2:Portfolio, Arbitrage, and Market Completeness | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3: State Prices | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Preferences | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Individual Optimality | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 6 | Chapter 6: Market Equilibrium | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 7 | Chapter 7: Basic Consumption-Based Asset Pricing | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 8 | Chapter 8: Factor Models | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 9 | Chapter 9: The Economics of the Term Structure of Interest Rates | 3 | 1 | 2 |  |
| 10 | Chapter 10: Risk-Adjusted Probabilities | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
|  | **Total** | 30 | 14 | 16 |  |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW**

The first chapter introduces and motivates the topic of the course. The deficiencies of the well-known Capital Asset Pricing Model are discussed. This motivates the development of more appropriate asset pricing models. A number of stylized empirical facts on the returns of stocks and bonds are presented, facts that theoretical models should ideally produce.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 2: PORTFOLIOS, ARBITRAGE, AND MARKET COMPLETENESS**

Using the language of stochastic processes developed in Chapter 2, this chapter shows how to represent assets and portfolios of assets in mathematical models of the financial markets and simultaneously the notation and terminology used. That some assets may be redundant is also explained. The key concept of an arbitrage is defined and discussed and contrasted with the “Law of One Price.” Finally, the chapter defines when a market is complete and when it is incomplete, which turns out to be important for many results in subsequent chapters.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 3: STATE PRICES**

Individual assets can be priced by combining the future state-dependent asset-specific dividends with a general pricing rule that applies to all assets. The general pricing rule can be represented by a state-price deflator which captures the present value of getting an extra dividend in different states and at different points in time. This chapter defines and investigates the properties of state-price deflators both in one-period, multi-period discrete-time, and continuous-time models. Among other things, a state-price deflator is shown to carry information about risk-free interest rates and risk premia. The existence and uniqueness of state-price deflators is linked to the absence of arbitrage and market completeness. Examples are given in which the computation of the present value of the dividends simplifies and in some cases even leads to closed-form solutions. The relation between real and nominal state-price deflators is explained. Finally, the relation between state-price deflators and risk-neutral probabilities is briefly discussed.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 4: PREFERENCES**

Asset prices are ultimately determined by the asset supply and demand of individuals and to study that we need to model the preferences of individuals. This chapter presents alternative representations of preferences, from abstract preference relations over utility indices to the more tractable expected utility criterion. The axioms supporting the use of utility indices or even expected utility are discussed. The important concept of risk aversion and the most frequently used utility functions are introduced together with a discussion of their properties and empirical evidence on preferences. Finally, the chapter explains how preferences can be formalized in multi-period settings. In addition to the standard assumption of time-additive expected utility, extensions to habit formation, state-dependent preferences, and recursive utility are presented. Later chapters show that these extensions are important in asset pricing models.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 5: INDIVIDUAL OPTIMALITY**

This chapter solves the optimal consumption and investment decisions of a rational individual in various settings. First, the simple one-period framework is considered, where straightforward utility-maximization under the appropriate budget constraint implies that the marginal rate of substitution of the individual - the ratio of marginal utility of future consumption to marginal utility of current consumption - is a valid state-price deflator. The analysis is extended to both discrete-time and continuous-time settings, where the dynamic programming approach is introduced to solve the optimization problem. This also leads to a link between marginal utility of consumption and marginal utility of wealth, the so-called envelope condition. Both time-additive expected utility (with one or two consumption goods), habit formation, state-dependent preferences, and recursive utility are considered. In any case, the appropriately defined marginal rate of substitution of the individual works as a state-price deflator.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 6: MARKET EQUILIBRIUM**

This chapter defines and studies the properties of financial market equilibria in frictionless exchange economies populated by utility-maximizing individuals. The concept of Pareto-optimal equilibria is introduced and shown to be intimately related to the idea of a central planner allocating aggregate resources to all individuals in the economy. Pareto-optimal equilibria are shown to lead to efficient sharing of the risks in the economy, which implies the individuals will agree on the state-price deflator. Financial market equilibria are demonstrated to be Pareto-optimal in all complete markets and in so-called effectively complete markets. The idea of a representative individual is explained, and the relation between the preferences of all individuals in the economy and the preferences of the hypothetical representative individual is discussed.

**CHAPTER 7: BASIC CONSUMPTION-BASED ASSET PRICING**

This chapter combines the general results on state-price deflators from Ch. 4 with the relation between state-price deflators and individuals’ marginal rate of substitution developed in Ch. 6. This combination leads to a link between asset prices and expected returns on one side and the optimal consumption of individuals on the other side. If a representative individual exists (Ch. 7), the link holds for aggregate consumption. Based on some approximations or an assumption of CRRA utility and lognormal consumption, the so-called Consumption-based CAPM or CCAPM is derived and interpreted. However, the basic CRRA-lognormal version of the CCAPM is shown to be unable to match a number of stylized empirical asset pricing facts and thus leaves a number of puzzles, such as the equity premium puzzle and the risk-free rate puzzle. Finally, some potential problems with such empirical tests of the CCAPM are discussed.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 8: FACTOR MODELS**

The consumption-based asset pricing models are elegant, but tests and applications suffer from the questionable quality of the available consumption data, and at least some of these models are unsuccessful in matching empirical facts. This motivates a search for models linking asset prices and returns to other factors than consumption. This chapter studies the so-called factor models that link the prices of the many available financial assets to a number of common observable pricing factors. The relation between state-price deflators and pricing factors is investigated. The classic CAPM and the Arbitrage Pricing Theory are reviewed. The role of mean-variance efficient returns in factor models is explored. In multi-period settings the distinction between conditional and unconditional pricing factors is emphasized. The envelope condition derived in Ch. 6 is shown to serve as a theoretical foundation for the choice of pricing factors. Finally, a brief overview of empirical studies of factor models is provided.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 9: THE ECONOMICS OF THE TERM STRUCTURE OF INTEREST RATES**

This chapter focuses on the consequences of general asset pricing theory for the pricing of bonds and for the term structure of interest rates implied by bond prices. After a short introduction to the notation and the bond market terminology, relations are derived between equilibrium interest rates and aggregate consumption and production in settings with a representative individual. The famous Vasicek and Cox-Ingersoll-Ross models are shown to follow as special cases. The implications of these models for the term structure of interest rates are explored. The relation between real and nominal interest rates and yield curves is investigated, both in a general setting and in specific models. Finally, the traditional expectation hypothesis is critically reviewed.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**CHAPTER 10: FINANCIAL ASSET PRICING THEORY**

It is well known from the binomial model and the Black-Scholes model that an option can be priced by the expectation under the risk-neutral probability measure of the option’s discounted payoff. This chapter explores how the risk-neutral valuation approach can be applied more generally in asset pricing. First, the mathematics involved in the change of probability measure is explained, including the Girsanov theorem that provides the effect of a measure change on continuous-time processes. Next, the risk-neutral probability measure is formally defined and studied. Other risk-adjusted probability measures are introduced and shown to be useful in the pricing of certain assets. An important special case is the so-called forward measures. Throughout the chapter the alternative probability measures are linked to state-price deflators.

Reading:

Claus Munk (2013): **Financial Asset Pricing Theory,** Oxford University Press

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

- Theoretical Financial economics

- Advanced Microeconomics

- Advanced Macroeconomics

- Managerial Economics

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* Claus Munk (2013). Financial Asset Pricing Theory
* Ha- Joon Chang (2018). Economics
* Robert Graham (2013). Managerial Economics for Dummies

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students are eligible for the final exam if:

- Attending at least 75% of classroom time.

- Obtaining at least 5 points (out of 10) in the periodic tests.

Besides:

- Participating fully in the discussions and homework.

- Mode of final exam: Essay exam

- Grade calculation for the module:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Scores** | **Proportion** | **Total score** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Mid-term test | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final examination | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc Prof. Dr.** **Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM |
| **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** International Economy and Finance

Code**:** KHMA3309 Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Department of Macroeconomics

**Office:** Faculty of Macroeconomics. Room 313, Building 7, National Economics University

**Office Hours:** Mon – Fri, 8 AM to 5 PM

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Before taking this course, students have to complete Micro-economics 1 and 2 ; Macroeconomics 1 and 2 course.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**:

Concepts from International Monetary Economics play a key role in the understanding of current events in the global economy. The objective of the course is, among others, to provide to the students the tools and theories that allow them to (i) have an overview of the macroeconomic linkages among economies, (ii) understand the role of foreign exchange rates in international trade, how they are determined and the impacts of monetary policy, (iii) analyze how central banks intervene in the foreign exchange market, (iv) compare the trade-offs posed by different international monetary arrangements and optimum currency areas, and (v) discuss the causes and factors leading to financial crises, and the role played by developing countries in the international arena.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**:

The course aims to provide to the students the concepts and theories underlying the integration of domestic economies into the global world. By the end of the course, students should be able to understand the costs and benefits arising from different policies, and the extra challenges that such policies might pose to countries engaging in the process of globalization. The measurement of the performance of an open economy using standard metrics of national income accounting, the balance of payments, and exchange rates will be discussed, and so will policies required to achieve internal and external balance in the short and the long-run. Among others, some topics we will focus on are the choice of the appropriate exchange rate regime, current account and debt sustainability and the reform of the international financial architecture so as to minimize the vulnerability of an economy to financial and currency crises.

**Learning Objectives**

After successfully completing this course you should be able to:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1 | Understand the challenges posed by rapid globalization. |
| 2 | Model the open macroeconomy in the short-run and in the long-run. |
| 3 | Understand key concepts, theory and policy relating to an open macroeconomy. |
| 4 | Understand issues relating to reshaping the international financial architecture. |

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1 | **Chapter 1:** National Income Accounting and the Balance of Payments. (Chapter 13) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 2 | **Chapter 2:** Exchange Rates and the Foreign Exchange Market: An Asset Approach (Chapter 14) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 3 | **Chapter 3:** Money, Interest Rates, and Exchange Rates (Chapter 15) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 4 | **Chapter 4:** Price Levels and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run (Chapter 16) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 5 | **Chapter 5:** Output and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run (Chapter 17) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 6 | **Chapter 6:** Fixed Exchange Rates and Foreign Exchange Intervention (Chapter 18) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 7 | **Chapter 7:** International Monetary Systems: An Historic Overview (Part 1) (Chapter 19) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 8 | **Chapter 8:** International Monetary Systems: An Historic Overview (Part 2) (Chapter 19) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 9 | **Chapter 9:** Financial Globalisation: Opportunity and Crisis (Chapter 20) | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
| 10 | **Chapter 10 :** Optimum Currency Areas and the Euro (Chapter 21) | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 11 | **Chapter 11 (Lecture):**Developing Countries: Growth, Crisis and Reform (Chapter 22) | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **24** | **21** |  |

**Chapter 1: National Income Accounting and the Balance of Payments.**

**1.1. The National Income Accounts**

* + National Product and National Income
  + Capital Depreciation, International Transfers, and Indirect
  + Business Taxes
  + GDP

**1.2. National Income Accounting for an Open Economy**

* + Consumption
  + Investment
  + Government Purchase
  + The National Income Identity for an Open Economy
  + An Imaginary Open Economy
  + The Current Account and Foreign Indebtedness
  + Saving and the Current Account

**1.3. Case Study:** Government Deficit Reduction May Not Increase the Current Account Surplus

**1.4. The Balance of Payment Accounts**

* + Examples of Paired Transactions
  + The Fundamental Balance of Payments Identity
  + The Current Account, Once Again
  + The Capital Account
  + The Financial Account
  + The Statistical Discrepancy
  + Official Reserve Transactions

**1.5. Case Study:** Is the United States the World's Biggest Debtor?

**Chapter 2: Exchange Rates and the Foreign Exchange Market: An Asset Approach**

**2.1. Exchange Rates and International Transactions**

* + Domestic and Foreign Prices
  + Exchange Rates and Relative Prices

**2.2. The Foreign Exchange Market**

**2.3. Box: A Tale of Two Dollars**

* + Characteristics of the Market
  + Spot Rates and Forward Rates
  + Foreign Exchange Swaps
  + Future and Options

**2.4. The Demand for Foreign Currency Assets**

* + Assets and Asset Returns
  + Risk and Liquidity
  + Interest Rates
  + Exchange Rates and Asset Returns
  + A Simple Rule
  + Return, Risk, and Liquidity in the Foreign Exchange Market

**2.5. Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market**

* + Interest Parity: The Basic Equilibrium Condition
  + How Changes in the Current Exchange Rate Affect Expected Returns
  + The Equilibrium Exchange Rate

**2.6. Interest Rates, Expectations, and Equilibrium**

* + The Effect of Changing Interest Rates on the Current Exchange Rate
  + The Effect of Changing Expectations on the Current Exchange Rate

**2.7. Box:** The Perils of Forecasting Exchange Rates

**Chapter 3: Money, Interest Rates, and Exchange Rates**

**3.1. Money Defined: A Brief Review**

**3.2. The Demand for Money by Individuals**

**3.3. Aggregate Money Demand**

**3.4. The Equilibrium Interest Rate: The Interaction of Money Supply and Demand**

**3.5. The Money Supply and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run**

**3.6. Money, the Price Level, and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run**

**Chapter 4: Price Levels and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run**

**4.1. The Law of One Price**

**4.2. A Long-Run Exchange Rate Model Based on PPP**

**4.3. Empirical Evidence on PPP and the Law of One Price**

**4.4. Box:** Some Meaty Evidence on the Law of One Price

**4.5. Explaining the Problems with PPP**

**4.6. Case Study:** Why Price Levels Are Lower in Poorer Countries 409 Beyond Purchasing Power Parity: A General Model of Long-Run Exchange Rates

**4.7. Box:** Sticky Prices and the Law of One Price: Evidence from Scandinavian Duty-Free Shops

**4.8. Case Study:** Why Has the Yen Kept Rising? 419 International Interest Rate Differences and the Real Exchange Rate

**Chapter 5: Output and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run**

**5.1. Determinants of Aggregate Demand in an Open Economy**

* + Determinants of Consumption Demand
  + Determinants of the Current Account
  + How Real Exchange Rate Changes Affect the Current Account
  + How Disposable Income Changes Affect the Current Account

**5.2. The Equation of Aggregate Demand**

* + The Real Exchange Rate and Aggregate Demand
  + Real Income and Aggregate Demand

**5.3. How Output Is Determined in the Short Run**

**5.4. Output Market Equilibrium in the Short Run:** The DD Schedule

* + Output, the Exchange Rate, and Output Market Equilibrium
  + Deriving the DD Schedule
  + Factors that Shift the DD Schedule

**5.5. Asset Market Equilibrium in the Short Run:** The AA Schedule

* + Output, the Exchange Rate, and Asset Market Equilibrium
  + Deriving the AA Schedule
  + Factors that Shift the AA Schedule

**5.6. Short-Run Equilibrium for an Open Economy:** Putting the DD and AA Schedules Together

**5.7. Temporary Changes in Monetary and Fiscal Policy**

**5.8. Inflation Bias and Other Problems of Policy Formulation 455 Permanent Shifts in Monetary and Fiscal Policy**

**5.9. Macroeconomic Policies and the Current Account**

**5.10. Box:** The Dollar Exchange Rate and the U.S. Economic Slowdown of 2000-2001

**5.11. Gradual Trade Flow Adjustment and Current**

**5.12. Account Dynamics**

* + The J-Curve
  + Exchange Rate Pass-Through and Inflation

**Chapter 6: Fixed Exchange Rates and Foreign Exchange Intervention**

**6.1. Why Study Fixed Exchange Rates?**

**6.2. Central Bank Intervention and the Money Supply**

* + The Central Bank Balance Sheet and the Money Supply
  + Foreign Exchange Intervention and the Money Supply
  + Sterilization
  + The Balance of Payments and the Money Supply

**6.3. How the Central Bank Fixes the Exchange Rate**

* + Foreign Exchange Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate
  + Money Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate
  + A Diagrammatic Analysis

**6.4. Stabilization Policies with a Fixed Exchange Rate**

* + Monetary Policy
  + Fiscal Policy
  + Changes in the Exchange Rate
  + Adjustment to Fiscal Policy and Exchange Rate Changes

**6.5. Case Study:** Fixing the Exchange Rate to Escape from a Liquidity Trap

**6.6. Balance of Payments Crises and Capital Flight**

**6.7. Managed Floating and Sterilized Intervention**

**6.8. Reserve Currencies in the World Monetary System**

* + The Mechanics of a Reserve Currency Standard
  + The Asymmetric Position of the Reserve Center

**6.9. The Gold Standard**

**Chapter 7+8: International Monetary Systems: An Historic Overview (Part 1+2)**

**7.1. Macroeconomic Policy Goals in an Open Economy**

**7.2. International Macroeconomic Policy under the Gold Standard, 1870-1914**

**7.3. Box:** Hume versus the Mercantilists

**7.4. Case Study:** The Political Economy of Exchange Rate Regimes: Conflict over America's Monetary Standard During the 1890s

**7.5. Case Study:** The International Gold Standard and the Great Depression

**8.1. The Bretton Woods System and the Internationa] Monetary Fund**

**8.2. Internal and External Balance under the Bretton Woods System**

**8.3. Analyzing Policy Options under the Bretton Woods System**

**8.4. The External Balance Problem of the United States**

**8.5. Case Study:** The Decline and Fall of the Bretton Woods System

**8.7. Worldwide Inflation and the Transition to Floating Rates**

**Chapter 9: Financial Globalisation: Opportunity and Crisis**

**9.1. The International Capital Market and the Gains from Trade**

* + Three Types of Gain from Trade
  + Risk Aversion
  + Portfolio Diversification as a Motive for International Asset Trade
  + The Menu of International Assets: Debt Versus Equity

**9.2. International Banking and the International Capital Market**

* + The Structure of the International Capital Market
  + Growth of the International Capital Market
  + Offshore Banking and Offshore Currency Trading
  + The Growth of Eurocurrency Trading

**9.3. Regulating International Banking**

* + The Problem of Bank Failure
  + Difficulties in Regulating International Banking
  + International Regulatory Cooperation

**9.4. Case Study:** The Day the World Almost Ended

**9.5. How Well Has the International Capital Market Performed?**

* + The Extent of International Portfolio Diversification
  + The Extent of Intertemporal Trade
  + Onshore-Offshore Interest Differentials
  + The Efficiency of the Foreign Exchange Market

**Chapter 10: Optimum Currency Areas and the Euro**

**10.1. How the European Single Currency Evolved**

**10.2. The Euro and Economic Policy in the Euro Zone**

**10.3. Box:** Designing and Naming a New Currency

**10.4. The Theory of Optimum Currency Areas**

**10.5. Case Study:** Is Europe an Optimum Currency Area?

**10.6. Box:** How Much Trade Do Currency Unions Create?

**10.7. The Future of EMU**

**Chapter 11: Developing Countries: Growth, Crisis and Reform**

**11.1. Income, Wealth, and Growth in the World Economy**

* + The Gap Between Rich and Poor
  + Has the World Income Gap Narrowed over Time?

**11.2. Structural Features of Developing Countries**

**11.3. Developing Country Borrowing and Debt**

* + The Economics of Capital Inflows to Developing Countries
  + The Problem of Default
  + Alternative Forms of Capital Inflow

**11.4. Latin America: From Crisis to Uneven Reform**

**11.5. Box:** The Simple Algebra of Moral Hazard

**11.6. Case Study:** Argentina's Economic Stagnation

* + Reforms, Capital Inflows, and the Return of Crisis

**11.7. East Asia:** Success and Crisis

**11.8. Box:** What Did Asia Do Right?

* + Asian Weaknesses
  + The Asian Financial Crisis
  + Crises in Other Developing Regions

**11.9. Case Study:** Can Currency Boards Make Fixed Exchange

**11.10. Lessons of Developing Country Crises**

**11.11. Reforming the World's Financial "Architecture"**

* + Capital Mobility and the Trilemma of the Exchange Rate Regime
  + "Prophylactic" Measures
  + Coping with Crisis
  + A Confused Future

**7. BOOK**

Krugman, P.R., Obstfeld, M. and Melitz, M.J. International Economics: Theory and Policy, Global Edition (11th Edition). Pearson Higher Education, USA.

### 8. Recommended Resources

Schmitt-Grohe, S., Uribe, M., Woodford, M. International Macroeconomics, Columbia University.

**9. ASSESSMENT**

Course assessment will be based on attendance (10%), a midterm test/presentation (20%) and a final exam (70%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Investment analysis in Financial Markets

Code: **KHMI1106**  Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Microeconomics Department

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:**

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Macroeconomics 1 &2, Microeconomics 1 &2, Theory of Probability and Statistics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course introduces students to the theory and general principles of investment analysis in the financial market, in which introduce students to the contents of financial markets; financial market instruments; financial market structure; methods of investment analysis in the financial market include basic analysis and technical analysis; valuation methods for stocks and bonds; introduction to portfolio theory. This course will help students to apply the principles of economics, probability & statistics to investment analysis in financial markets.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

By the end of this module, students will get the following results:

• Understand financial markets and the structure of financial markets, tools and trading methods.

• Understand the role of investment analysis in the financial market, grasp the methods of investment analysis, including basic analysis and technical analysis.

• Understand macroeconomic analysis, industry analysis and company analysis.

• Understand and be able to apply stock price determination methods through valuation models: dividend discount model (DDM), free cash flow to Equity model (FCFE) and compare pricing method.

• Understand portfolio theory and investment selection principles through portfolio theory.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 5 | Chapter 5 | 9 | 6 | 3 |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: Basics of investment analysis**

*An overview of the chapter*: a brief introduction about investment in the financial market, which distinguishes between investing in financial markets and investing in real assets. Introducing types of financial assets and characteristics, the role of financial market along with its structure to help students to understand the classification and organization of financial market. This chapter also introduces the basic factors affecting investment analysis on the financial market such as macro environment factors, industry operating environment as well as psychological factors, shocks. The issue of the role of investment asset analysis as well as the selection of assets in the investment process are also mentioned.

**1.1 Definition and characteristics of investment in financial markets**

1.1.1 Concept of financial investment

1.1.2 Types of financial assets

1.1.3 Characteristics, roles and structure of financial markets

**1.2 Factors affect investment analysis.**

**1.3 The role of asset analysis and selection in the financial investment process.**

**References:**

Elton E., Gruber M., Brown S., Goetzmann W. (2013) Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis.

**CHAPTER 2: Investment analysis methods in financial market**

*An overview of the chapter*: introduction of concepts and content of basic analysis including macro environment analysis (politics, economics, institutions, policies ...), industry environment; analyze and evaluate the operation of companies. The concept and content of technical analysis includes a number of graph, application indicators in technical analysis applied to tools such as stocks, exchange rates, gold, etc.

**2.1 Basic analysis**

2.1.1. Basic analytical concept

2.1.2. Content of basic analysis

**2.2 Technical analysis**

2.2.1. Technical analysis concept

2.2.2. Basis of technical analysis method

2.2.3. The format of the graph

2.2.4. Some indicator lines

**References:**

Elton E., Gruber M., Brown S., Goetzmann W. (2013) Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis.

**CHAPTER 3: Bond valuation**

*An overview of the chapter*: presents the types of risks that can affect bonds such as interest rate risk, reinvestment, changes in standard yield curve, variation of credit score… .; bond pricing methods in practice; analysis of the volatility of bond prices when interest rates change (through a measure of the average maturity of bonds); effects of special terms on bond prices such as terms on conversion, buying / selling before maturity ...

**3.1. Risks in bond investment**

3.1.1. Interest rate risk

3.1.2. Re-investment risk

3.1.3. Credit risk

3.1.4. Exchange rate risk

**3.2. Bond pricing method**

3.2.1. Valuation of zero-coupon bonds

3.2.2. Valuation of eternal bonds

3.2.3. Valuation of bonds with periodic interest payment

3.2.4. Valuation of bonds according to actual transactions

**3.3. Analyze the sensitivity of bond prices when interest rates change**

3.3.1. Factors affect bond prices when interest rates change

3.3.2. Measure of sensitivity of bond prices when interest rates change

**References:**

Elton E., Gruber M., Brown S., Goetzmann W. (2013) Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis.

**CHAPTER 4: Stock valuation**

*An overview of the chapter*:: introduction of stock valuation methods including discounted dividend stream and some basic models such as Gordon growth model, 2-stage growth, H-model, growth 3 stages. Free cash flow to equity (FCFE) method: steady growth model, two-stage growth, three-stage growth. Relative Valuation method: including comparison based on the basic pricing model and the market price, on the basis of comparing elements of EPS, book value, revenue, cash flow ... together with conditions for comparison and pricing to control the appropriateness of the valuation method.

**4.1. Dividend discount model (DDM):**

4.1.1. The content of dividend discount method

 4.1.2. The models use dividend discount method

- Gordon's growth model

- Two-stage growth model

- Model H

- Three-stage growth model

**4.2. Free cash flow to equity (FCFE) method**

4.2.1. Contents of Free cash flow to equity method

4.2.2. Models use Free cash flow to equity method

- Model of steady growth

- Two-stage growth model

- Three-stage growth model

**4.3. Comparative Valuation**

4.3.1. The method is based on intrinsic value.

4.3.2. The method is based on market prices.

4.3.3. Advantages and disadvantages of the comparative method.

**References:**

Elton E., Gruber M., Brown S., Goetzmann W. (2013) Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis.

**CHAPTER 5: Porfolio theory**

*An overview of the chapter*: an overview of the Markowitz portfolio theory, efficient curves and how to construct effective curves. Basis and principle of choosing optimal portfolio. Introduce the concept of risk-free assets, market portfolios and capital market lines, based on which the introduction of the SML stock market line and the CAPM capital asset pricing model.

**1.1. Markowitz portfolio theory**

**1.2. Effective curve**

**1.3. Choose an optimal portfolio**

**1.4. Capital market theory:**

1.4.1 Risk-free assets

1.4.2 Market portfolio

1.4.3 Capital market lines

**1.5. Capital asset pricing model (CAPM):**

1.5.1 Contents of the CAPM model

1.5.2 Stock market line (SML)

1.5.3 Meaning of the CAPM model

**References:**

Elton E., Gruber M., Brown S., Goetzmann W. (2013) Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

### Lecture on Investment Analysis on financial markets

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* Bùi Kim Yến, **Phân tích chứng khoán và quản lý danh mục đầu tư,** NXB Thống kê, 2009
* Tô Kim Ngọc, **Phân tích và đầu tư chứng  khoán**, NXB Thống kê, 2008

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

Course results are based on final exam score (50%), discussion score (20%) and test (30%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Economic Policy Analysis

Code: KHMA3310 Number of Credit: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Microeconomics

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Microeconomics 1, 2; Macroeconomics 1, 2; Econometrics 1, 2.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course will give students the opportunity to apply macroeconomic and microeconomic theories to practice for analyzing economic policy issues. Students can apply the theoretical knowledge they have learned into reality to solve practical economic problems. At the same time, students can also improve their writing and presentation skills on economic issues, a very important factor for an economist who tends to make and analyze policy. This course would be very useful for students who wish to become economic analysts or policy makers working in government agencies, research institutes..

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

After finishing this course, students will

• understand the practicality of economic theories and empirical methods in solving policy- related economic analysis

• be able to analyze emerging and complex issues based on knowledge about economic theories and empirical methods as well as related policy papers.

• be able to write rigorous and convincing analytical papers, using appropriately both theory and empirical evidence.

• be able to collaborate with others to complete research and group presentations.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Total hours** | **In details** | | **Notes** |
| **Theory** | **Practice, Discussion, Exams** |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 7 | 4 | 3 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 5 | Chapter 5 | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| 6 | Chapter 6 | 8 | 5 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **27** | **18** |  |

Teaching through lectures and direct exchange between lecturers and learners. In addition, learners should actively search and read the references given by lecturers. Teaching facilities involves computers and projectors.

**Chapter 1: Overview of economic policy analysis**

This chapter describes the basic issues related to economic analysis, such as concepts, policy goals, and who conduct them. Meanwhile, the chapter also points out the differences between micro and macro policies and policy analysis on an international scale. Steps in applied economic research, proposing policy analysis, publishing results

**1.1. The goals of public policy**

**1.2. The role of government and policy analyst**

**1.3. Basic preperation for policy analysis**

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House.

Weimer, D.L. and A.R. Vining. (2010). Policy Analysis: Concepts and Practice (5th ed). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall

**Chapter 2: Cost-Benefit analysis**

This chapter will introduce the basic elements of cost-benefit analysis such as identification of stakeholders and the impact of policies, benefits and costs that participants receive or bear. Computational techniques for assessing the effectiveness of policies based on cost-benefit comparisons will also be presented here.

**2.1. The process of benefit-cost analysis**

**2.2. Decision criteria for benefit-cost analysis**

**2.3. Types of policy decisions**

**2.4. Benefits and costs using efficiency concepts**

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House, Chapter 6

**Chapter 3: Policy analysis involving risk and uncertainty**

This chapter is to introduce students to the economic analysis of risk and uncertainty. Many of the most important economic decisions must be made in the presence of risk or uncertainty. As such, a better understanding of how decisions are (or should be) made in these situations is critical for designing an appropriate policy. In this chapter, we will explain the formal theoretical models of decision making under uncertainty; critically evaluate decision theory and the implications of risk and uncertainty; and apply the theories of decision making to explain and predict behavior in settings where risk and uncertainty are most prevalent.

This chapter will introduce how to bring risk and uncertainty into the policy analysis. In the context of increasing risk and uncertainty,

**3.1. Measuring risk and uncertainty**

**3.2. Expected value**

**3.3. Decision trees**

**3.4. The expected utility model**

**3.5. Option value and expected net benefits**

**3.6 Uncertainty and policy analysis**

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House, Chapter 6

**Chapter 4: Macro stabilization policies**

The macroeconomic stabilization policies in the short term. Using fiscal and monetary policies to stabilize the macro in the world and in Vietnam. The issue of government debt and its sustainability will also be discussed in this chapter. Regulating monetary policy before and after the recent financial and monetary crises, as well as affecting the asset market, will also be presented.

**4.1 Fiscal policy**

**4.2 Tax policy**

**4.3 Monetary policy**

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House

**Chapter 5: Trade policies**

This chapter will address the current controversial issues regarding trade, the benefits from trade as well as the implications of restrictive trade policies. The causes of current account imbalances will also be discussed here.

5.1 Basic tariff analysis

5.2 Costs and benefits of a tariff

5.3 Other instruments of trade policy

5.4 Trade policy in developing world

5.5 Controversies in trade policy

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House

**Chapter 6: Economic policies and environment**

This chapter discusses issues such as external effects, joint ownership of public assets, public goods and government policy instruments to solve these issues. We also consider environmental policies and challenges when analyzing environmental policies on a global and domestic level.

**6.1. Economic views of pollution**

**6.2. The benefits of pollution control**

**6.3. Policy goals: how much and where to reduce pollution**

**6.4. Incentive approaches to pollution control**

**6.5. Pollution policy examples**

**References:**

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House, Chapter 13

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

Thissen W. và Walker W. (2013) Public Policy Analysis – New Developments, Springer Publishing House.

Bellinger W. (2007) The Economic Analysis of Public Policy, Routledge Publishing House.

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

Weimer, D.L. and A.R. Vining. (2010). Policy Analysis: Concepts and Practice (5th ed). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY**

• Grading scale: 10 points , in it

- Attendance (10%)

- Assignment/ test: 40%

- Completion of the course (50%): Essay for 90 minutes

• Conditions to complete the course: Attendance ≥ 5

• Students are considered to pass the course if they have an average score ≥ 4.5 points on the component score, and have a final essay score ≥ 4.

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCAION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVESRITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  ----------------------------------- |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** **Theory of Portfolio Choice**

Code: KHMI3306 Number of Credit: **03**

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Microeconomics Department

**Office:** Building A1, NEU Campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm

**3. PREREQUISITE**: Financial Economics; Behavioural Finance and Economics

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

The Theory of Portfolio Choice course will make students familiar with set of issues related to modern portfolio management. We will cover the wide range of topics, starting from classical mean-variance portfolio theory, tactical asset allocation and volatility trading to hedge funds strategies. The emphases are on practicalities of portfolio choice and portfolio management.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The primary objective of the course is to study the theory and empirical evidence relevant for investing, particularly in the context of portfolio management. The major topics will include:

* Security markets and the investment industry
* Optimal portfolio selection
* The relation between risk and return
* Market efficiency

In one way or another, most of the course is geared towards the understanding and implementation of “modern portfolio theory,” which is a general approach for maximizing the expected return of a portfolio given a certain amount of risk. This approach is the basis of virtually all quant investing strategies and is widely used by traditional portfolio managers as well.

A secondary objective is to prepare you to do quantitative and statistical analysis in a broad range of settings. The majority of the course will be spent studying and testing mathematical models. Regression analysis is a tool that will be used throughout the course, and my goal is for you to become proficient in its use and interpretation.

**6. COURSE CONTENT:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: Introduction to the Investment Background | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 2 | Chapter 2: Principles of Valuation | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 3 | Chapter 3: Analysis and Management of Common Stocks | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 4 | Chapter 4: Analysis and Management of Bond | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 5 | Chapter 5: Derivatives Security Analysis | 9 | 6 | 3 |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE INVESTMENT BACKGROUND**

This chapter will provide a background for your study of investments and portfolio management by focusing on the following topics:

**1.1. The Investment Setting**

**1.2. The Asset Allocation Decision**

**1.3. Selecting Investments in a Global Market**

**1.4. Organization and Functioning of Security Markets**

**1.5. Security-Market Indexes**

**Reading:**

* Brown: Chapter 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

**CHAPTER 2: PRINCIPLES OF VALUATION**

This chapter will consider the theory and practice of estimating the value of various securities, which is the heart of investing and leads to the construction of a portfolio that is consistent with your risk-return objectives. You will recall that the investment decision is based on a comparison of an asset’s intrinsic value and its market price.**2.1. Analysis of Financial Statements**

**2.2. Introduction to Security Valuation**

**Reading:**

* Brown: Chapter 10,11.

**CHAPTER 3: ANALYSIS AND MANAGEMENT OF COMMON STOCKS**

In chapter 2, we considered the basic valuation principles and practices applied to all securities and how this was applied to the global asset allocation decision. In Part 4, we apply these same valuation principles and practices to the analysis and management of common stocks. The objective is to be in position to make the critical risk-return decision at the market-industry-company stock level.

**3.1. Macroanalysis and Microvaluation of the Stock Market**

**3.2. Industry Analysis**

**3.3. Company Analysis and Stock Valuation**

**3.4. Technical Analysis**

**3.5. Equity Portfolio Management Strategies**

**Reading:**

* Brown: Chapter 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.

**CHAPTER 4: ANALYSIS AND MANAGEMENT OF BOND**

The chapter is intended to provide (1) a basic understanding of bonds and the bond markets around the world, (2) background on analyzing returns and risks in the bond market, (3) insights regarding the valuation of bonds, including numerous new fixed-income securities with very unusual cash flow characteristics, and (4) an understanding of either active or passive bond portfolio management.

**4.1. Bond Fundamentals**

**4.2. The Analysis and Valuation of Bonds**

**4.3. Bond Portfolio Management Strategies**

**Reading:**

* Brown: Chapter 17, 18, 19.

**CHAPTER 5: DERIVATIVES SECURITY ANALYSIS**

Derivatives, in their many forms, have become a vital part of modern security markets, trailing only stocks and bonds in terms of importance. Unlike stocks and bonds, however, their wide-spread use is a relatively recent phenomenon, and misconceptions still exist about how derivatives work and the proper way for investors to trade them. The lecture addresses this concern by providing the investor with a framework for understanding how derivatives are valued and used in practice.

**5.1. An Introduction to Derivative Markets and Securities**

**5.2. Forward and Futures Contracts**

**5.3. Option Contracts**

**5.4. Swap Contracts**

**5.5. Other Embedded Derivatives**

**Reading:**

* Brown: Chapter 20, 21, 22, 23.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS:**

* E.J. Elton, M.J. Gruber, S.J. Brown and W.N. Goetzmann, Modern Portfolio Theory And Investment Analysis, 8th Edition, Wiley India, 2010.

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings:

* N. Amenc and V. Le Sourd, Portfolio Theory and Performance Analysis, John Wiley, 2003.
* J.Cvitanic and F. Zapatero, Introduction to the Economics and Mathematics of Financial Markets, Prentice-Hall of India, 2007.
* D. G. Luenberger, Investment Science, Oxford University Press, 1998.
* J.C. Francis and D. Kim, Modern Portfolio Theory: Foundation, Analysis and New Developments, John Wiley, 2013.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

The course result will depend on the grades of the final examination (50%); the group discussion (20%) and the midterm examination (30%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  ------------------- | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Economics of Derivative Securities

Code: KHMI3307 Number of Credits: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Departments of Microeconomics

Office: Room 808, Building A1, National Economics University  
Office Hours: Weekdays, 7.30 – 16.30

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Students had to finish the following courses before taking this course:

Microeconomics 1, 2; Macroeconomics 1, 2; Financial Economics; Monetary and Financial Theory; Theory of Porfolio

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

This course covers one of the most exciting yet fundamental areas in finance: derivative securities. In the modern financial architecture, financial derivatives can be the most challenging and exotic securities traded by institutional specialists, while at the same time, they can also be the basic securities commonly traded by retail investors such as S&P 500 Index Options. Beyond trading, the basic ideas of financial derivatives serve as building blocks to understand a much broader class of financial problems, such as complex asset portfolios, strategic corporate decisions, and stages in venture capital investing.

The global derivatives market is one of the most fast-growing markets, with over $600 trillion notional value in total. It is as important as ever to understand both the strategic opportunities offered by these derivative instruments and the risks they imply.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

The main objective of this course is to help students gain the intuition and skills on (1) pricing and hedging of derivative securities, and (2) using them for investment and risk management. In terms of methodologies, we apply the non-arbitrage principle and the law of one price to dynamic models through three different approaches: the binomial tree model, the Black-Scholes-Merton option pricing model, and the simulation-based risk neutral pricing approach.

We discuss a wide range of applications, including the use of derivatives in asset management, the valuation of corporate securities such as stocks and corporate bonds with embedded options, interest rate derivatives, credit derivatives, as well as crude oil derivatives. In addition to theoretical discussions, we also emphasize practical considerations of implementing strategies using derivatives as tools, especially when no-arbitrage conditions do not hold.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION TO DERIVATIVES | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
| 2 | UNIT 2: FORWARDS, FUTURES, AND SWAPS | 6 | 4 | 2 |  |
| 3 | UNIT 3: OPTIONS | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 4 | UNIT 4: FINANCIAL ENGINEERING AND APPLICATIONS | 12 | 9 | 3 |  |
| 5 | UNIT 5: ADVANCED PRICING THEORY AND APPLICATIONS | 12 | 9 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **32** | **13** |  |

**CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION TO DERIVATIVES**

**1.1. Introduction to Derivatives**

**1.2. An Introduction to Forwards and Options**

**1.3. Insurance, Collars, and Other Strategies**

**1.4. Introduction to Risk Management**

**Reading:**

* M: Ch. 1
* M: Ch. 2
* M: Ch. 3
* M: Ch. 4

**CHAPTER 2: FORWARDS, FUTURES, AND SWAPS**

**2.1. Financial Forwards and Futures**

**2.2. Commodity Forwards and Futures**

**2.3. Interest Rate Forwards and Futures**

**2.4. Swaps**

**Reading:**

* M: Ch. 5
* M: Ch. 6
* M: Ch. 7
* M: Ch. 8

**CHAPTER 3: OPTIONS**

**3.1. Parity and Other Option Relationships**

**3.2. Binomial Option Pricing: Basic Concepts**

**3.3. Binomial Option Pricing: Selected Topics**

**3.4. The Black-Scholes Formula**

**3.5. Market-Making and Delta-Hedging**

**3.6. Exotic Options: I**

**Reading:**

* M: Ch. 9
* M: Ch. 10
* M: Ch. 11
* M: Ch. 12
* M: Ch. 13
* M: Ch. 14

**CHAPTER 4: FINANCIAL ENGINEERING AND APPLICATIONS**

**4.1. Financial Engineering and Security Design**

**4.2. Corporate Applications**

**4.3. Real Options**

**Reading:**

* M: Ch. 15
* M: Ch. 16
* M: Ch. 17

**CHAPTER 5: ADVANCED PRICING THEORY AND APPLICATIONS**

**5.1. The Lognormal Distribution**

**5.2. Monte Carlo Valuation**

**5.3. Brownian Motion and Ito's Lemma**

**5.4. The Black-Scholes-Merton Equation**

**5.5. Risk-Neutral and Martingale Pricing**

**5.6. Exotic Options: II**

**5.7. Volatility**

**5.8. Interest Rate and Bond Derivatives**

**5.9. Value at Risk**

**5.10. Credit Risk**

**Reading:**

* M: Ch. 18
* M: Ch. 19
* M: Ch. 20
* M: Ch. 21
* M: Ch. 22
* M: Ch. 23
* M: Ch. 24
* M: Ch. 25
* M: Ch. 26
* M: Ch. 27

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOK & COURSE MATERIALS**

* McDonald, Derivatives Markets, 3rd ed., Pearson 2012 **(M)**

### 8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings

* Hull, Options, Futures and Other Derivatives, 8th ed. (7th also works), Pearson Prentice Hall 2011 **(H)**.
* Das, Traders, Guns & Money, 3rd ed. Financial Times/Prentice Hall 2006 **(D)**.
* Veronesi, Fixed Income Securities: Valuation, Risk, and Risk Management, Wiley 2010 **(V)**.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

Students are eligible for the final exam if:

- Attending at least 75% of classroom time.

- Obtaining at least 5 points (out of 10) in the periodic tests.

Besides:

- Participating fully in the discussions and homework.

- Mode of final exam: Essay exam

- Grade calculation for the module:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Contents** | **Scores** | **Proportion** | **Total score** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%X (1) |
| 2 | Mid-term test | Y | 30% | 30%Y (2) |
| 3 | Final examination | Z | 60% | 60%Z (3) |
|  | **Final grade** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM |
| **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Application of Game Theory in Economic Analysis

Code**:** KHMI3308 Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Microeconomics Department

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University

**Office Hours:** Mon – Fri, 8 AM to 5 PM

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Before taking this course, students have to complete Microeconomics 1, 2; Macroeconomics 1, 2; Mathematics courses.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**:

 This is an introductory course in game theory, which will provide you with mathematical tools for analyzing strategic situations - your optimal decision depends on what other people will do. In particular, we will study central solution concepts in game theory such as Nash equilibrium, subgame perfect equilibrium, and Bayesian equilibrium. Game theory has been widely recognized as an important analytical tool in such fields as economics, management, political science, phycology and biology. To illustrate its analytical value, we will cover a variety of applications that include international relations, development, business competition, auctions, marriage market, and so forth.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**:

The main goal of the course is to make you apply the tools of game theory in order to examine interactive decision problems, i.e., situations whereby every agent’s actions have payoff consequences on other agents. In particular, by the end of this course you will be able to:

* Construct the structure of interactive decision problems,
* Analyze which are the available strategies for each player, and
* What is the amount of information known by a player before she makes her move.
* Predict and describe how a certain game is going to be played by the players involved (i.e., their equilibrium behavior), or how different firms or institutions behave every time they face a strategic interaction.
* Model economics and business topics covered in other courses using the formal tools that game theory provides. As a by-product, you will learn to view social interactions as strategic games, to use game theoretic concepts to predict behavior in these interactions and to conceive of ways in which altering the game affects social outcomes

**Learning Objectives**

This course will contribute to the following learning goals: critical and creative thinking, and quantitative reasoning

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |  |
| 1 | **Chapter 1:** Applications of Mathematics in Game Theory | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 2 | **Chapter 2:** Introduction to Game Theory | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 3 | **Chapter 3:** Static Games of Complete Information 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 4 | **Chapter 4:** Static Games of Complete Information 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 5 | **Chapter 5:** Dynamic Games of Complete Information 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 6 | **Chapter 6:** Dynamic Games of Complete Information 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 7 | **Chapter 7:** Static Games of Incomplete Information 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 8 | **Chapter 8:** Static Games of Incomplete Information 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 9 | **Chapter 9:** Dynamic Games of Incomplete Information 1 | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
| 10 | **Chapter 10:** Dynamic Games of Incomplete Information 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 11 | **Chapter 11: Review and Exercises** | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **24** | **21** |  |

**Chapter 1: Applications of Mathematics in Game Theory**

Math is a very important tool to help readers grasp the content of the course. Therefore, this lesson is designed to provide the concepts and functions used in this book. Besides using this appendix as a reference, readers can learn more about mathematics in other related documents. This is useful because it helps readers understand the arguments quickly and accurately.

In this section, content will include:

**1.1. Set and Sequences**

**1.2. Functions**

**1.3. Calculus and Optimization problem**

**1.4. Probability and random variables.**

**Chapter 2: Introduction to Game Theory**

This topic introduces an overview of the history of Game Theory, from real-life, economic, political, and social phenomena that give rise to issues that need to be dealt with in an antagonistic way, then form this field of science. The lesson briefly introduces the the course, recent applications in economics, politics and society. The lesson also introduces game theory problems that apply mathematical tools, differentiating them from other games; at the same time stating concepts and definitions of elements that constitute the game theory problem: players, strategies, outcome, game rules; Differences between types of game.

In this section, the following topics would be discussed in the class:

**2.1. History of Development and Application of Game Theory**

**2.2. Strategy, belief, rationality, and output expectations**

**2.3. How to describe a game**

**2.4. Strategic solutions**

**Chapter 3+4: Static Games of Complete Information**

This topic introduces the static games of complete information in the game theory, with which players make the decision at the same time. This topic introduces the concept of "Nash equilibrium", as well as how to find equilibrium strategies in completely informative static problems. The concept of Nash equilibrium strategy is compared with the Pareto optimization to show the similarities and differences between these strategies.

In this section, the following topics would be discussed in the class:

* Normal-Form Games with Pure Strategies, e.g. *The Prisoner’s Dilemma, Cournot Duopoly*
* Matrix Representation: Two-Player Finite Game, e.g. *The Prisoner’s Dilemma, Rock-Paper-Scissors.*
* Dominance in Pure Strategies
* Iterated Elimination of Strictly Dominated Pure Strategies
  + *Iterated Elimination and Common Knowledge of Rationality*
  + *Example: Cournot Duopoly*
  + *Evaluating IESDS*
* Nash Equilibrium: Beliefs, Best Response, and Rationalizability
  + Nash Equilibrium in Pure Strategies
  + Nash Equilibrium: Some Classic Applications: *The Tragedy of the Commons. Cournot Duopoly, Bertrand Duopoly.*
* Mixed Strategies
  + Strategies, Beliefs, and Expected Payoffs
  + Mixed-Strategy Nash Equilibrium: *Matching Pennies, Rock-Paper-Scissors, Multiple Equilibria: Pure and Mixed*
  + IESDS and Rationalizability Revisited
  + Nash’s Existence Theorem

**Chapter 5+6**: Dynamic Games of Complete Information

In this lecture, we will develop the problem of dynamic games, and here the information is still complete. But we distinguish between complete and perfect information and imperfect information. The perfect information implies that the player, when making a decision, has complete information about the previous decisions in the game. In contrast, players with imperfect information do not get this information. The most useful method to describe dynamic games is the decision tree. We will introduce the theory of dynamic game of complete information and give some examples of their application.

In this section, the following topics would be discussed in the class:

* The Extensive-Form Game
  + *Game Trees*
  + *Imperfect versus Perfect Information*
* Strategies and Nash Equilibrium
  + *Pure Strategies*
  + *Mixed versus Behavioral Strategies*
  + *Normal-Form Representation of Extensive-Form Games*
* Nash Equilibrium and Paths of Play
* Sequential Rationality and Backward Induction
* Subgame-Perfect Nash Equilibrium: Concept
* Subgame-Perfect Nash Equilibrium: Examples:
  + *The Centipede Game*
  + *Stackelberg Competition*
  + *Time-Inconsistent Preferences*
* Multistage Games
  + Strategies and Conditional Play
  + Subgame-Perfect Equilibria
  + The One-Stage Deviation Principle
* Repeated Games
  + Finitely Repeated Games
  + Infinitely Repeated Games
  + Subgame-Perfect Equilibria
  + Application: Tacit Collusion
  + Sequential Interaction and Reputation
* Strategic Bargaining

**Chapter 7+8: Static Games of Incomplete Information**

Going back to the analysis of the simultaneous game, we see that the player will not know the opponent's choice but will get information about their set of actions, thereby making predictions of possible choices (we define it as a player's belief) and finally make decisions. In this topic, we will develop one more type of game: the game with incomplete information. This type of game was developed by John Harsanyi in the mid-1960s. Based on Harsanyi's ideas, we will build equilibrium theory when players have beliefs about the characteristics and actions of their opponents.

In this section, the following topics would be discussed in the class:

* Bayesian Games
* Examples: *Teenagers and the Game of Chicken and Study Groups*
* Inefficient Trade and Adverse Selection
* Mixed Strategies Revisited: Harsanyi’s Interpretation
* Auctions and Competitive Bidding
  + *Second-Price Sealed-Bid Auctions*
  + *English Auctions*
  + *First-Price Sealed-Bid and Dutch Auctions*

**Chapter 9+10**: **Dynamic Games of Incomplete Information**

In this section, the following topics would be discussed in the class:

* Sequential Rationality with Incomplete Information
  + The Problem with Subgame Perfection
  + Perfect Bayesian Equilibrium
  + Sequential Equilibrium
* Signaling Games
  + Education Signaling: The MBA Game
  + Limit Pricing and Entry Deterrence: Separating Equilibria and Pooling Equilibria
* Refinements of Perfect Bayesian Equilibrium in Signaling Games
* Information Transmission and Cheap Talk
  + Information Transmission: A Finite Example
  + Information Transmission: The Continuous Case
  + Application: Information and Legislative Organization

**7. BOOK**

### Game Theory: An Introduction, Steve Tadelis, 2012, Princeton University Press.

* Games, Strategies, and Decision Making, Joseph E. Harrington, Jr., Worth Publishing.
* Robert Gibbons, *Game Theory for Applied Economists*, 1992

### 8. Recommended Resources

Schmitt-Grohe, S., Uribe, M., Woodford, M. International Macroeconomics, Columbia University.

**9. ASSESSMENT**

Course assessment will be based on attendance (10%), a midterm test/presentation (20%) and a final exam (70%).

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM |
| **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME: Technical Analysis**

Code**:** NHCK1114 Number of Credit: 3

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** School of Banking and Finance

**Office:** Building A1, National Economics University

**Office Hours:** Mon – Fri, 8 AM to 5 PM

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:** Financial and monetary theory ; Stock market 1, 2; Analysis and stock investment

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION**:

 The Technical Analysis module consists of 5 chapters, with the basic contents of analyzing price and volume fluctuations for stock market trends. The module will give students an overview of the risks and benefits of applying technical analysis in trading securities. Throughout the course, students will be able to use the supporting software to analyze the stock market trends in Vietnam and apply to make investment decisions as well as advise customers.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES**:

After taking the Technical Analysis module, students will:

- Understand basic knowledge of technical analysis

- Understand the principles and the process of movement of securities prices

- Know the basic technical analysis model

- Know how to use some software in technical analysis to make investment decisions as well as advise clients.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No** | **Name** | **Total** |  | | |
| **Theory** | **Discussion, exercises** | **Note** |
| 1 | Chapter 1: An overview of technical analysis | 6 | 5 | 1 |  |
| 2 | The movement of securities prices | 10 | 6 | 4 |  |
| 3 | The technical indicators | 10 | 6 | 4 |  |
| 4 | Candles and candlestick patterns | 10 | 6 | 4 |  |
| 5 | Technical analysis models | 9 | 8 | 2 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **30** | **15** |  |

**CHAPTER I - OVERVIEW OF TECHNICAL ANALYSIS**

Introducing learners to the basics of technical analysis; assumptions to be able to apply technical analysis. Hence, learners can distinguish between fundamental analysis and technical analysis. At the same time, this first chapter will introduce learners to the chart in technical analysis and fundamentals - Dow's principles.

**1.1 Technical analysis concept**

**1.2 Assumptions of technical analysis**

1.2.1. Market movements reflect all

Price trend

History has a tendency to repeat

**1.3. Differential analysis and technical analysis**

**1.4. Charts in Basic Analysis**

1.4.1. Unit of time

1.4.2. Unit price

1.4.3. Graphs

1.4.3.1. Line charts

1.4.3.2. Bar charts

1.4.3.3. Candlestick charts

**1.5. Dow Theory**

*References:*

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***;

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***;

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**CHAPTER II - TRANSITION OF SECURITIES**

Introducing to learners the general rules of the motion principle of volumes. Chapter Two will equip learners with the basics of the 15 principles of volume movement. From there, learners will understand the movement of securities prices

**2.1. The principle of motion of mass**

2.1.1. General rules

2.1.2. The principles of motion of mass

**2.2. The movement of securities prices**

2.2.1. Securities prices move along the trend

2.2.1.1. The concept of movement of securities prices

2.2.1.2. Characteristics of the trend

2.2.1.3. The process of breaking the trend

2.2.1.4. Trends determining tool

2.2.2. Support level - Resistance level

2.2.2.1. Definition of Support level - Resistance level

2.2.2.2. The psychology of forming the level of support - resistance

2.2.2.3. Determining the support - resistance level

2.2.2.4. Moving Support - Resistance level

2.2.2.5. The importance when support levels are broken

*References:*

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***;

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***;

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**CHAPTER III - TECHNICAL ANALYSIS INDICATORS**

Introducing concepts to learners, constraints and price and index usage rules. The program equips learners with basic theory on two important indicators: Trend Indicators and Momentum Indicators, which helps learners to apply the indexes in analyzing securities, making investment decisions.

**3.1. Concepts and limitations of technical indicators**

3.1.1. Concept

3.1.2. Limitations of technical indicators

**3.2. Rules for using indexes and prices**

**3.3. Trend indicators group**

3.3.1. General features

3.3.2. Some trend indicators

3.3.2.1. Moving averages

3.3.2.2. Parabolic SAR (Stop And Reversal)

3.3.2.3. Bollinger Bands

3.3.2.4. ADX (Average Directional Movement Index)

**3.4. Momentum indexes group**

3.4.1. General features

3.4.2. Application

3.4.3. Some momentum indicators

3.4.3.1. MACD - Moving Average Convergence / Divergence

3.4.3.2. RSI - Relative Strength Index

3.4.3.3. SO - Stochastic Oscillator

3.4.3.4. CCI - Commodity Channel Index

*References:*

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***;

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***;

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**CHAPTER IV – CANDLES AND CANDLESSTICK PATTERNS**

Chapter 4 equips learners with concepts related to patterns, background elements and candlestick patterns. From there, students can apply background pattern analysis and other tools

**4.1. Concepts related to patterns**

4.1.1. Entry and Exit

4.1.2. The basic securities phenomenons

4.1.3. Composition of candles

4.1.4. Candlestick charts

**4.2. The basic elements of the candlestick pattern**

4.2.1. Length of the candle’ body and Candle’ shadow

4.2.2. Position of the candle

4.2.3. The combination of many candles

**4.3. Candlestick patterns**

4.3.1. Long white candlestick

4.3.2. Doji candle

4.3.3. Distance between two candles (Window / Gap)

4.3.4. Hammer Pattern and Hanging Man

4.3.5. Star pattern

4.3.6. Engulfing pattern

4.3.7. Harami pattern

*References:*

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***;

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***;

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**CHAPTER V - TECHNICAL ANALYSIS MODELS**

Chapter 5 introduces learners to different types of patterns, indicators and how to combine different indicators. From there, learners can predict the probable patterns and apply in trading securities according to the pattern of technical analysis.

**5.1. Introduction of the price fluctuation model**

5.1.1. The basis of the model

5.1.2. Nature of the model

5.1.3. Classification of models

5.1.3.1. Reversal model

5.1.3.2. Downstream model

5.1.3.3. Model with dual role

**5.2. Reversal patterns**

5.2.1. General features

5.2.2. Classification

5.2.2.1. Head and Shoulders

5.2.2.2. Inverse Head and Shoulders

5.2.2.3. Double Tops

5.2.2.4. Double Bottoms

5.2.2.5. Three triple top models

5.2.2.6. The triple bottom model

**5.3. Downstream models**

5.3.1. General features

5.3.2. Classification

5.3.2.1. Flag and Pennant

5.3.2.2. Cup and handle pattern

**5.4. Model with dual role**

5.4.1. General features

5.4.2. Classification

5.4.2.1. Rectangular model

5.4.2.2. Triangular model

5.4.2.3. Wedge model

*References:*

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***;

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***;

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**7. TEXTBOOKS**

Charles D. Kirkpatrick, ***Technical Analysis, The Complete Resource for Financial Market Technicians***

**8. RECOMMENDED READINGS**

Alan Shaw, ***Technical Analysis***

Summer N. Levine, ***Financial Analyst’s Handbook***, Second Edition;

***Market Technicians Association Educational Foundation***, Study and lecture materials covering broad categories of technical analysis;

John Murphy, ***Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***;

John Murphy, ***Study Guide for Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets***, ***a Self-Training Manual***;

Martin J. Pring, ***Technical Analysis Explained***.

**9. ASSESSMENT**

Full class participation is required. Students cannot quit more than 20% of the course period

Final exam form: writing test and exercises

Components:

Attendance in class: 10% (integer)

Mid-term examination score: 20% (rounded to 0.5)

Final exam score: 70% (rounded to 0.5)

Module score = 10% \* Attendance point + 20% \* Test score + 70% \* Final exam score

Course score: rounded to 0.1

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING  **NATIONAL ECONOMICS UNIVERSITY**  **-------------------** | SOCIALIST REPUBLIC OF VIETNAM  **Independence - Freedom - Happiness**  **-----------------------------------** |

**COURSE SYLLABUS**

**FOR FULL-TIME UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMS**

**1. COURSE NAME:** Financial Risk Management

Code: NHTM1114 Number of Credits: 03

**2. DEPARTMENT IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION:** Commercial Banking Department

**Office:** Building A1, NEU campus  
**Office Hours:** 8am – 5pm from Monday to Friday  
**Office Telephone:**

**3. PRE-REQUISITE:**

Students enrolling in financial risk management course should have successfully completed the following pre-requisite classes: Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Market1, Commercial Bank 1, Econometrics.

**4. COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

In today’s world of rapid information flows, rising volatility, regulatory concerns and oversight, prudent management increasingly requires understanding and measuring risk. Merged or individual banks, securities dealers, insurance companies and industrial firms with significant financing operations, all require enterprise-wide risk management that may span many operations across currencies and locations in real time.

The course offers an introduction into the evolving and expanding practice of financial risk management. Risk management is a complex process of identifying; quantifying and managing various risk exposures. The course analyzes and discusses the various sources of risk. Particular attention is devoted to the main risk management techniques such as Value at Risk (VaR), volatility models, and correlation models.

The course focuses on the main issues of financial risk management. Risk management has emerged as one of the most important areas in finance. The evolution of this subject has been attracting the interest of both practitioners and academia. Therefore, the course is a blend of theory and application. Real data analysis is an important part of this course. A student successfully completing this course will be familiar with the main current practices of financial risk management.

**5. COURSE OBJECTIVES:**

Main objectives of the course are as follows:

+ To develop basic knowledge and skills of financial risk management in modern financial institutions

+ To understand how large-scale complex risk can be quantified, need to be managed and architected.

+ To get familiar with the main techniques of financial risk management in term of modeling, measuring and hedging alternative risk

+ To apply these skills to the full spectrum of banking operations through classroom study, integrated team projects and independent research.

**6. COURSE CONTENTS:**

**TENTATIVE SCHEDULE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***No*** | ***Contents*** | ***Total hours*** | ***In details*** | | ***Notes*** |
| ***Theory*** | ***Practice, Discussion, Exams*** |
| 1 | Chapter 1 | 3 | 3 | 0 |  |
| 2 | Chapter 2 | 9 | 3 | 6 |  |
| 3 | Chapter 3 | 9 | 3 | 6 |  |
| 4 | Chapter 4 | 9 | 3 | 6 |  |
| 5 | Chapter5 | 9 | 6 | 3 |  |
| 6 | Chapter6 | 6 | 3 | 3 |  |
|  | **Total** | **45** | **21** | **24** |  |

**CHAPTER 1–INTRODUCTION TO FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS AND FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT**

The global financial system, which includes variety of financial institutions such as banks, insurance company, mutual fund, and hedge fund,… is very complex in term of structure and operation. This chapter introduces both fundamental functions and risks and challenges that financial institutions have to face in their daily business. Besides, some theories of effective margin, asset pricing model and risk management in financial institution are also presented in detail.

* 1. **An Introduction toFinancial Risk**
     1. The Correlationbetween Risk and Return
     2. The Classification of Financial Risk
     3. The Role and Function of Financial Risk Management
     4. Financial Risk Management Proceses
  2. **Risk Management in Financial Institutions**
     1. Commercial Banks
     2. Depository Institutions
     3. Insurance Companies
     4. Investment Banks and Security Companies
     5. Mutual Funds and Hedge Funds

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Joel Bessis (2011). *Risk Management in Banking*. Second Edition. John Wiley & SonsPublishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
3. John C.Hull (2012). *Risk Management and Financial Institution*. Third Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
4. Nguyễn Minh Kiều (2009). *Quản trị rủi ro tài chính*. Stastistic Publishing House. Hà Nội. Chapters 1. 2. 3.
5. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Finance Publishing House. Hà Nội.
6. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.
7. Philippe Jorion (2011). *Financial Risk Manager Handbook*. Sixth Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.

**CHAPTER 2: RISK MEASUREMENT MODELS**

Risk management in the modern financial and risk measurement models has become an important tool for managers to quantify the level of risk and financial losses. The main content of this chapter represents some measurement models which are currently widely used in banks and financial institutions. Not only summarizing and comparing the measurement models, this chapter also offers some suggestions pro and cons to apply these models in practice.

**2.1. Introduction to Risk Measurement**

2.1.1 The Roles of Risk Measurement

2.1.2 Some Fundamental Problems of Risk Measurement

2.1.3 Risk Measurement Methodology

**2.2. Risk Measurement Models**

2.2.1 Loss Estimation Models

*2.2.1.1 . VaR model*

*2.2.2.2 . ES model*

2.2.2 Probability Estimation Models

*2.2.2.1 . Logit model*

*2.2.2.2 . Probit model*

*2.2.2.3 . Merton-KMV model*

2.2.3 Models for Time Series Analysis

*2.2.3.1 . Modeling time series*

*2.2.3.2 . Forecasting interest rate*

*2.2.3.3 . GARCH model to forecast volatility of asset prices*

**2.3. Scaling Qualitative Data**

**2.4. Data Problem for Risk Measurement**

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. John C Hull (2006). *Options*. *Futures*. *and Other Derivatives*. Sixth Edition. Pearson Prentice Hall. [New Jersey](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Upper_Saddle_River,_New_Jersey). USA.
3. Philippe Jorion (2007). *Value at Risk: The New Benchmark for Managing Financial Risk*. 3rd edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.

**CHAPTER 3: INTEREST RATE RISK**

For most financial institutions, interest rate risk is considered the most crucial market risk as the majority of their assets and liabilities is related to this variance. Changes in market interest rates impact directly on two perspectives: income and costs due to the difference between the typical assets and liabilities those are sensitive to interest movement; and changes in net worth of equity that could result from the mismatch between real duration of assets and liabilities. This chapter studies the movement of interest rate and measurement models which are being applied by financial institutions.

**3.1 Introduction to Interest Rate Risk**

3.1.1 Definition of Interest Rate Risk

3.1.2 The Impact of Interest Movement

3.1.3 The Importance of Interest Rate Risk Measurement

**3.2 Interest Rate Risk Measurement**

3.2.1 Forecasting Variation of Interest Rate

*3.2.1.1. Hol-Winter model*

*3.2.1.2. ARIMA model*

*3.2.1.3. ECM model*

*3.2.1.4. Vasicek model*

3.2.2 Interest Rate Risk Measurement Models

*3.2.2.1. Interest sensitive GAP model*

*3.2.2.2. Repricing model*

*3.2.2.3. Duration model*

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Duffie. D (1994). ‘Debt Management and Interest Rate Risk’.*Risk Management: Challenges and Solutions*. edited by W. Beaver and G. Parker. New York: MacGraw – Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
3. Frank J. Fabozzi (1999). *Duration*. *Convexity*. *and Other Bond Risk Management*. Frank Fabozzi Associates.
4. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Finance Publishing House. Hà Nội.
5. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.

**CHAPTER 4: FOREIGN EXCHANGE RATE RISK**

The globalization brings along increasing risk of foreign exchange to financial institutions. This risk may occur in the foreign currency business, the foreign currency loans or purchases of securities issued by governments or organizations. This chapter will study how financial institutions to assess and measure risk when they hold assets and funds in the form of foreign currency and deal with risks exposuring in spot/forward transactions one currency futures market.

Strategic and operational foreign exchange and commodity risk management is also a core skill of a corporate risk manager. The key drivers that affect currencies and commodity prices are examined and the organization’s exposure determined. Strategic management of these exposures is achieved through the use of financial instruments and best practice risk management

**4.1 Introduction to Exchange Risk**

**4.2 Exchange Risk Management**

4.2.1 Exchange Risk Identification

4.2.2 Definition of Currency Position (Basel 2)

4.2.3 Exchange Risk Management Models

**4.3 Exchange Risk Measurement**

4.3.1 Estimation for Losses

4.3.2 Volatility Forecasting

**4.4 Some Exchange Risk Management Techniques**

4.4.1 Forward/ Non deliverable Forward

4.4.2 Options Contract

4.4.3 Future Contract

4.4.4 Swap Contract

4.4.5 Money Market Operations

* 1. **Exchange Risk Monitoring and Control**

4.5.1. Position Limits

4.5.2. Stop Loss Limits

4.5.3. Var Limits

4.5.4. Limits Based on Stress Testing

4.5.5. Others

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Joel Bessis (2011*)*. *Risk Management in Banking*. Second Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
3. John C.Hull (2012). *Risk Management and Financial Institution*. Third Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA..
4. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.

**CHAPTER 5: CREDIT RISK**

Credit risk is the possibility of losses stemming from the borrowers, the bond issuers and the parties involved in derivative transactions who are not fully implement its financial obligations stipulated in the signed contract. This chapter refers to the evaluation of credit quality and introduces some traditional and modern credit risk measurement models. In addition, it also in-depth evaluates the ability of financial institutions in measuring credit risk of a loan portfolio and benefit from the diversification of the portfolio.

* 1. **Introduction to credit risk**
     1. Credit risk
        1. *Definition of credit risk*
        2. *Classification of credit risk*
        3. *Impact Factors*
        4. *Possible outcomes of credit risk*
     2. Credit risk management
        1. *Definition of credit risk management*
        2. *Procedure*
  2. **Credit risk measurement**

5.2.1. Goal of government

5.2.2. Goal of banks

5.2.3. Goal of customer

**5.3 Credit risk measurement methods**

5.3.1 Qualitative method

5.3.2 Quantitative method

5.3.3 Combination of qualitative and quantitative methods

5.3.4 Credit risk measurement models

*5.3.4.1. Logistic models (Logit, Probit)*

*5.3.4.2. VaR model*

*5.3.4.3. Alman model*

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Joel Bessis (2011*)*. *Risk Management in Banking*. Second Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
3. John C.Hull (2012). *Risk Management and Financial Institution*. Third Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA..
4. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.

**CHAPTER 6: LIQUDITY RISK**

This chapter will study the problems result from liquidity risk. The first half of chapter identifies the causes of liquidity risk exposure on the balance sheet of financial institutions. The following part will discuss alternative methods applying to measure liquidity risk in some typical financial institutions.

* 1. **An overview of liquidity risk**

6.1.1. Definition of liquidity risk

*6.1.1.1 Liquidity supply*

*6.1.1.2 Liquidity demand*

*6.1.1.3 Liquidity buy*

*6.1.1.4 Liquidity sell*

*6.1.1.5 Assets liquidity*

*6.1.1.6 The liquidity of source funds*

*6.1.1.7. The liquidity in banks*

6.1.2. Sources of liquidity risk

6.1.3. Consequences of liquidity risk

* + - 1. *To customer*
      2. *To banks*
      3. *To economy*
  1. **Liquidity risk management**
     1. Goals of liquidity risk management
     2. Strategies of liquidity management
     3. Asset liquidity management
     4. Liability liquidity management
     5. Balanced liquidity management
     6. Liquidity management procedure
     7. Liquidity solving
     8. Stress-testing

**6.3. Liquidity risk measurement**

6.3.1 Goal of Liquidity risk measurement

6.3.2 Measuring scale

*6.3.2.1. Liquidity and analysis ratios*

*6.3.2.2. The risk measurement matrix*

6.3.3The liquidity risk forecast

**6.4. Measuring scale**

6.4.1 Liquidity and analysis ratios

6.4.2 Liquidity risk forecasting

**6.5 Measuring Criterion**

**6.6 Result’s Analysis and Assessment**

**Texts and readings for the chapter:**

1. Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Joel Bessis (2011*)*. *Risk Management in Banking*. Second Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
3. John C.Hull (2012). *Risk Management and Financial Institution*. Third Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
4. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.

**7. REQUIRED TEXTBOOKS & COURSE MATERIALS:**

Anthony Saunders. Marcia Millon Cornett (2007). *Financial Institutions Management: A Risk Management Approach*. 6th Edition. McGraw-Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.

**8. Recommended Texts & Other Readings:**

1. Duffie. D (1994). ‘Debt Management and Interest Rate Risk’.*Risk Management: Challenges and Solutions*. edited by W. Beaver and G. Parker. New York: MacGraw – Hill. [Pennsylvania](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennsylvania_Plaza). USA.
2. Frank J. Fabozzi (1999). *Duration*. *Convexity*. *and Other Bond Risk Management*. Frank Fabozzi Associates.
3. Joel Bessis (2011). *Risk Management in Banking*. Second Edition. John Wiley & SonsPublishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
4. John C.Hull (2012). *Risk Management and Financial Institution*. Third Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.
5. Nguyễn Minh Kiều (2009). *Quản trị rủi ro tài chính*. Stastistic Publishing House. Hà Nội. Chapters 1. 2. 3.
6. Rose. P.S. (2001). *Commercial Bank Management*. (translated version). Finance Publishing House. Hà Nội.
7. Phan Thị Thu Hà (2013). *Commercial Bank Management*. National Economics Publishing House. Hà nội.
8. Philippe Jorion (2011). *Financial Risk Manager Handbook*. Sixth Edition. John Wiley & Sons Publishing. [Manhattan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Manhattan). USA.

**9. ASSESSMENT & GRADING POLICY:**

- Students are required to attend at least 80% of class hours. Extra credit will be given for frequent attendance;

- Fully participating in class discussion and exercises.

- Final grade is calculated by the below structure:

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **No.** | **Criteria** | **Score** | **Weight** | **Score composition** |
| 1 | Attendance | X | 10% | 10%A (1) |
| 3 | Mid-term exam | Y | 20% | 20%C (3) |
| 4 | Final exam | Z | 70% | 70%D (4) |
|  | **Weighted score** |  |  | **(1)+(2)+(3)** |

*Hanoi,* 20th August 2019

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **HEAD OF DEPARTMENT** | **PRESIDENT** |
|  | **(Signed)**  **Assoc. Prof. Dr. Pham Hong Chuong** |